

# Microsoft Windows Common Criteria Evaluation

**Microsoft Windows 8.1** 

**Microsoft Surface Pro 3** 

Microsoft © 2015 Page 1 of 155

# Security Target

Document Information
Version Number
Updated On

0.09

April 3, 2015

This is a preliminary document and may be changed substantially prior to final commercial release of the software described herein.

The information contained in this document represents the current view of Microsoft Corporation on the issues discussed as of the date of publication. Because Microsoft must respond to changing market conditions, it should not be interpreted to be a commitment on the part of Microsoft, and Microsoft cannot guarantee the accuracy of any information presented after the date of publication.

This document is for informational purposes only. MICROSOFT MAKES NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, AS TO THE INFORMATION IN THIS DOCUMENT.

Complying with all applicable copyright laws is the responsibility of the user. This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-NoDerivs-NonCommercial License (which allows redistribution of the work). To view a copy of this license, visit <a href="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nd-nc/1.0/">http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nd-nc/1.0/</a> or send a letter to Creative Commons, 559 Nathan Abbott Way, Stanford, California 94305, USA.

Microsoft may have patents, patent applications, trademarks, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights covering subject matter in this document. Except as expressly provided in any written license agreement from Microsoft, the furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents, trademarks, copyrights, or other intellectual property.

The example companies, organizations, products, people and events depicted herein are fictitious. No association with any real company, organization, product, person or event is intended or should be inferred.

© 2015 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

Microsoft, Active Directory, Visual Basic, Visual Studio, Windows, the Windows logo, Windows NT, and Windows Server are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

The names of actual companies and products mentioned herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 2 of 155

# **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

| <b>SECUR</b> | RITY TARGET   | 2  |
|--------------|---|----|
|              |   |    |
| <u>TABLE</u> | OF CONTENTS   | 3  |
|              |   |    |
| LIST O       | F TABLES  | 8  |
|              |   |    |
| <u>1</u>     | SECURITY TARGET INTRODUCTION                                  | 10 |
| 1.1          | SECURITY TARGET, TOE, AND COMMON CRITERIA (CC) IDENTIFICATION | 10 |
| 1.1          | CC CONFORMANCE CLAIMS   |    |
| 1.3          | CONVENTIONS, TERMINOLOGY, ACRONYMS                            |    |
| 1.3.1        | CONVENTIONS, TERMINOLOGY, ACRONYMS                            |    |
| 1.3.1        | TERMINOLOGY   |    |
| 1.3.3        | ACRONYMS  |    |
| 1.3.3<br>1.4 | ST OVERVIEW AND ORGANIZATION                                  |    |
| 1.4          | ST OVERVIEW AND ORGANIZATION                                  | 13 |
| <u>2</u>     | TOE DESCRIPTION   | 15 |
| 2.1          | PRODUCT TYPES   | 15 |
| 2.2          | PRODUCT DESCRIPTION   |    |
| 2.3          | SECURITY ENVIRONMENT AND TOE BOUNDARY                         |    |
| 2.3.1        | Logical Boundaries  | 16 |
| 2.3.2        | Physical Boundaries   | 17 |
| 2.4          | TOE SECURITY SERVICES   | 17 |
| <u>3</u>     | SECURITY PROBLEM DEFINITION                                   | 20 |
| 3.1          | THREATS TO SECURITY   | 20 |
| 3.2          | ORGANIZATIONAL SECURITY POLICIES                              |    |
| 3.3          | SECURE USAGE ASSUMPTIONS                                      |    |
| <u>4</u>     | SECURITY OBJECTIVES   | 22 |
| 4.1          | TOE SECURITY OBJECTIVES                                       | າາ |
| 4.2          | SECURITY OBJECTIVES FOR THE OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT           |    |
| - <b>⊤∙</b>  | SECONT OBECITES ON THE OF ENATIONAL ENVIRONMENT               |    |
| <u>5</u>     | SECURITY REQUIREMENTS   | 24 |

| 5.1      | TOE SECURITY FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS  | 24 |
|----------|---|----|
| 5.1.1    | SECURITY AUDIT (FAU)  | 26 |
| 5.1.1.1  | Audit Data Generation (FAU_GEN.1)   | 26 |
| 5.1.1.2  | Security Audit Event Selection (FAU_SEL.1)  | 26 |
| 5.1.1.3  | Extended: Audit Storage Protection (FAU_STG_EXT.1)                                | 27 |
| 5.1.2    | CRYPTOGRAPHIC SUPPORT (FCS)   |    |
| 5.1.2.1  | Cryptographic Key Generation for Key Establishment (FCS_CKM.1(ASYM KA))           | 27 |
| 5.1.2.2  | Cryptographic Key Generation for Authentication (FCS_CKM.1(ASYM AU))              | 27 |
| 5.1.2.3  | Cryptographic Key Generation for WLAN (FCS_CKM.1(WLAN))                           | 28 |
| 5.1.2.4  | Cryptographic Key Distribution for WLAN (FCS_CKM.2)                               | 28 |
| 5.1.2.5  | Extended: Cryptographic Key Support for Root Encryption Key (FCS_CKM_EXT.1)       | 28 |
| 5.1.2.6  | Extended: Cryptographic Key Random Generation for Data Encryption Keys (FCS_CKM_E |    |
|          | 28  |    |
| 5.1.2.7  | Extended: Cryptographic Key Generation for Key Encryption Keys (FCS_CKM_EXT.3)    | 28 |
| 5.1.2.8  | Extended: Cryptographic Key Destruction (FCS_CKM_EXT.4)                           | 29 |
| 5.1.2.9  | Extended: TSF Wipe (FCS_CKM_EXT.5)  | 29 |
| 5.1.2.10 | Extended: Cryptographic Salt Generation (FCS_CKM_EXT.6)                           | 29 |
| 5.1.2.11 | Cryptographic Operation for Data Encryption/Decryption (FCS_COP.1(SYM))           |    |
| 5.1.2.12 | Cryptographic Operation for Hashing (FCS_COP.1(HASH))                             |    |
| 5.1.2.13 | Cryptographic Operation for Signature Algorithms (FCS_COP.1(SIGN))                | 30 |
| 5.1.2.14 | Cryptographic Operation for Keyed Hash Algorithms (FCS_COP.1(HMAC))               |    |
| 5.1.2.15 | Cryptographic Operation for Password Based Key Derivation (FCS_COP.1(PBKD))       |    |
| 5.1.2.16 | Extended: Initialization Vector Generation (FCS_IV_EXT.1)                         |    |
| 5.1.2.17 | Extended: Random Bit Generation (FCS_RBG_EXT.1)                                   |    |
| 5.1.2.18 | Extended: Cryptographic Algorithm Services (FCS_SRV_EXT.1)                        |    |
| 5.1.2.19 | Extended: Cryptographic Key Storage (FCS_STG_EXT.1)                               |    |
| 5.1.2.20 | Extended: Encrypted Cryptographic Key Storage (FCS_STG_EXT.2)                     |    |
| 5.1.2.21 | Extended: Integrity of Encrypted Key Storage (FCS_STG_EXT.3)                      |    |
| 5.1.2.22 | Extended: EAP TLS Protocol (FCS_TLS_EXT.1)  |    |
| 5.1.2.23 | Extended: TLS Protocol (FCS_TLS_EXT.2)  |    |
| 5.1.2.24 | Extended: HTTPS Protocol (FCS_HTTPS_EXT.1)  |    |
| 5.1.3    | USER DATA PROTECTION (FDP)  |    |
| 5.1.3.1  | Extended: Security Attribute Based Access Control (FDP_ACF_EXT.1)                 |    |
| 5.1.3.2  | Extended: Data at Rest Protection (FDP DAR EXT.1)                                 |    |
| 5.1.3.3  | Extended: Certificate Data Storage (FDP_STG_EXT.1)                                |    |
| 5.1.3.4  | Extended: Subset Information Flow Control (FDP_IFC_EXT.1)                         |    |
| 5.1.4    | IDENTIFICATION AND AUTHENTICATION (FIA)   |    |
| 5.1.4.1  | Extended: Authorization Failure Handling (FIA_AFL_EXT.1)                          |    |
| 5.1.4.2  | Extended: Bluetooth Authentication (FIA_BLT_EXT.1)                                |    |
| 5.1.4.3  | Extended: PAE Authentication (FIA_PAE_EXT.1)                                      |    |
| 5.1.4.4  | Extended: Password Management (FIA_PMG_EXT.1)                                     |    |
| 5.1.4.5  | Extended: Authorization Throttling (FIA TRT EXT.1)                                |    |

Microsoft © 2015

| 5.1.4.6  | Protected Authorization Feedback (FIA_UAU.7)                                       | 34 |
|----------|--|----|
| 5.1.4.7  | Extended: Authentication for Cryptographic Operation (FIA_UAU_EXT.1)               | 34 |
| 5.1.4.8  | Extended: Timing of Authentication (FIA_UAU_EXT.2)                                 | 34 |
| 5.1.4.9  | Extended: Re-Authorizing (FIA_UAU_EXT.3)   | 34 |
| 5.1.4.10 | Extended: Validation of Certificates (FIA_X509_EXT.1)                              | 34 |
| 5.1.4.11 | Extended: X.509 Certificate Authentication (FIA_X509_EXT.2)                        | 35 |
| 5.1.4.12 | Extended: Request Validation of Certificates (FIA_X509_EXT.3)                      | 35 |
| 5.1.5    | SECURITY MANAGEMENT (FMT)  |    |
| 5.1.5.1  | Management of Security Functions Behavior by the User (FMT_MOF.1(USER))            | 35 |
| 5.1.5.2  | Management of Security Functions Behavior by the Organization (FMT_MOF.1(ORG))     | 36 |
| 5.1.5.3  | Specifications of Management Functions (FMT_SMF.1)                                 | 38 |
| 5.1.5.4  | Extended: Specification of Remediation Actions (FMT_SMF_EXT.1)                     | 40 |
| 5.1.6    | PROTECTION OF THE TSF (FPT)  |    |
| 5.1.6.1  | Extended: Anti-Exploitation Services for Address Space Layout Randomization        |    |
| (FPT_AE) | (_EXT.1)   | 40 |
| 5.1.6.2  | Extended: Anti-Exploitation Services for Memory Page Permissions (FPT_AEX_EXT.2)   | 40 |
| 5.1.6.3  | Extended: Anti-Exploitation Services for Stack Overflow Protection (FPT_AEX_EXT.3) | 41 |
| 5.1.6.4  | Extended: Domain Isolation (FPT_AEX_EXT.4)   | 41 |
| 5.1.6.5  | Extended: Plaintext Key Storage (FPT_KST_EXT.1)                                    | 41 |
| 5.1.6.6  | Extended: No Key Transmission (FPT_KST_EXT.2)                                      | 41 |
| 5.1.6.7  | Extended: No Plaintext Key Transport (FPT_KST_EXT.3)                               | 41 |
| 5.1.6.8  | Extended: Self-Test Event Notification (FPT_NOT_EXT.1)                             | 41 |
| 5.1.6.9  | Reliable Time Stamps (FPT_STM.1)   | 41 |
| 5.1.6.10 | Extended: TSF Cryptographic Functionality Testing (FPT_TST_EXT.1)                  | 41 |
| 5.1.6.11 | Extended: TSF Integrity Testing (FPT_TST_EXT.2)                                    | 41 |
| 5.1.6.12 | Extended: Trusted Update: TSF Version Query (FPT_TUD_EXT.1)                        | 41 |
| 5.1.6.13 | Extended: Trusted Update Verification (FPT_TUD_EXT.2)                              | 42 |
| 5.1.7    | TOE Access (FTA)   | 42 |
| 5.1.7.1  | Extended: TSF- and User-initiated Locked State (FTA_SSL_EXT.1)                     | 42 |
| 5.1.7.2  | Extended: Wireless Network Access (FTA_WSE_EXT.1)                                  | 42 |
| 5.1.7.3  | Default TOE Access Banners (FTA_TAB.1)   | 42 |
| 5.1.8    | TRUSTED PATH/CHANNELS (FTP)  | 42 |
| 5.1.8.1  | Extended: Trusted Channel Communication (FTP_ITC_EXT.1)                            | 42 |
| 5.2      | TOE SECURITY ASSURANCE REQUIREMENTS  | 43 |
| 5.2.1    | CC PART 3 ASSURANCE REQUIREMENTS   | 43 |
| 5.2.1.1  | Timely Security Updates (ALC_TSU_EXT.1)  | 43 |
| 5.2.2    | MOBILE DEVICE FUNDAMENTALS PP ASSURANCE ACTIVITIES                                 | 44 |
| 5.2.2.1  | Security Audit   | 44 |
| 5.2.2.2  | Cryptographic Support  | 45 |
| 5.2.2.3  | User Data Protection   | 69 |
| 5.2.2.4  | Identification and Authentication  | 71 |
| 5.2.2.5  | Security Management  | 76 |

| 5.2.2.6  | Protection of the TSF                     | 81  |
|----------|---|-----|
| 5.2.2.7  | TOE Access                                | 86  |
| 5.2.2.8  | Trusted Path/Channels                     | 87  |
| <u>6</u> | TOE SUMMARY SPECIFICATION (TSS)           | 89  |
| 6.1      | PRODUCT ARCHITECTURE                      | 89  |
| 6.2      | TOE SECURITY FUNCTIONS                    | 89  |
| 6.2.1    | AUDIT                                     | 89  |
| 6.2.1.1  | Audit Collection                          | 89  |
| 6.2.1.2  | Selective Audit                           | 92  |
| 6.2.1.3  | Audit Log Overflow Protection             | 93  |
| 6.2.1.4  | Audit Log Restricted Access Protection    | 93  |
| 6.2.1.5  | SFR Mapping                               | 94  |
| 6.2.2    | CRYPTOGRAPHIC SUPPORT                     | 94  |
| 6.2.2.1  | Cryptographic Algorithms and Operations   | 94  |
| 6.2.2.2  | Programming Interfaces                    | 97  |
| 6.2.2.3  | Trusted Platform Module                   | 98  |
| 6.2.2.4  | Encrypting the Device with BitLocker      | 99  |
| 6.2.2.5  | Key Storage                               | 99  |
| 6.2.2.6  | Protecting Data with DPAPI                | 101 |
| 6.2.2.7  | Networking                                | 101 |
| 6.2.2.8  | Network Protocols                         | 101 |
| 6.2.2.9  | SFR Mapping                               | 103 |
| 6.2.3    | USER DATA PROTECTION                      | 104 |
| 6.2.3.1  | Restricting Access to System Services     | 104 |
| 6.2.3.2  | Data at Rest Protection                   | 107 |
| 6.2.3.3  | Certificate Storage                       | 108 |
| 6.2.3.4  | VPN Client                                | 108 |
| 6.2.3.5  | SFR Mapping                               | 108 |
| 6.2.4    | IDENTIFICATION AND AUTHENTICATION         | 109 |
| 6.2.4.1  | Protecting User Data                      | 109 |
| 6.2.4.2  | X.509 Certificate Validation              | 109 |
| 6.2.4.3  | SFR Mapping                               | 110 |
| 6.2.5    | SECURITY MANAGEMENT                       | 111 |
| 6.2.5.1  | SFR Mapping                               | 113 |
| 6.2.6    | PROTECTION OF THE TSF                     | 113 |
| 6.2.6.1  | Separation and Domain Isolation           | 113 |
| 6.2.6.2  | Protection from Implementation Weaknesses | 115 |
| 6.2.6.3  | Time Service                              |     |
| 6.2.6.4  | Self-Tests                                | 116 |

| 6.2.6.5                        | Windows Code Integrity   | 117               |
|--------------------------------|--|-------------------|
| 6.2.6.6                        | Windows and Application Updates                                    | 118               |
| 6.2.6.7                        | SFR Mapping  | 119               |
| 6.2.7                          | TOE Access   | 120               |
| 6.2.7.1                        | Windows 8.1  | 120               |
| 6.2.7.2                        | SFR Mapping  | 121               |
| 6.2.8                          | Trusted Path / Channels  | 121               |
| <u>7</u>                       | PROTECTION PROFILE CONFORMANCE CLAIM                               | 123               |
| 7.1                            | RATIONALE FOR CONFORMANCE TO PROTECTION PROFILE                    | 123               |
| <u>8</u>                       | RATIONALE FOR MODIFICATIONS TO THE SECURITY REQUIREMENTS           | 124               |
| 8.1                            | FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS  | 124               |
| 8.2                            | SECURITY ASSURANCE REQUIREMENTS                                    | 126               |
| 8.3                            | RATIONALE FOR THE TOE SUMMARY SPECIFICATION                        | 126               |
| <u>9</u>                       | APPENDIX A: LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS                                  | 129               |
| <u>10</u>                      | APPENDIX B: INTERFACES   | 134               |
| <u>11</u>                      | APPENDIX C: ANALYSIS OF SPECIAL PUBLICATION 800-56A AND 800-56B    | 136               |
| 11.1                           | SPECIAL PUBLICATION 800-56A  | 136               |
| 11.1.1                         | NIST SP 800-56A Sections   | 136               |
| 11.1.1.1                       | Sections 1 – 3   | 136               |
| 11.1.1.2                       | Section 4 Key Establishment Schemes Overview                       | 136               |
| 11.1.1.3                       | Section 5 Cryptographic Elements                                   | 136               |
| 11.1.1.4                       | Section 6 Key Agreement  | 143               |
| 11.1.1.5                       | Section 7 DLC-Based Key Transport                                  | 145               |
| 11.1.1.6                       | Section 8 Key Confirmation   | 145               |
| 11.1.1.7                       | Section 9 Key Recovery   | 146               |
| 11.1.1.8                       | Section 10 Implementation Validation                               | 146               |
| 11.1.1.9                       |  |                   |
|                                |  |                   |
| 11.1.1.1                       | O Appendix B: Rationale for Including Identifiers in the KDF Input | 146               |
| 11.1.1.1<br>11.1.1.1           | Appendix B: Rationale for Including Identifiers in the KDF Input   | 146<br>146        |
| 11.1.1.1<br>11.1.1.1<br>11.1.2 | O Appendix B: Rationale for Including Identifiers in the KDF Input | 146<br>146        |
| 11.1.1.1<br>11.1.1.1           | O Appendix B: Rationale for Including Identifiers in the KDF Input | 146<br>146<br>146 |

| 11.1.2.3  | Alternative Implementations  | 147 |
|-----------|--|-----|
| 11.2      | SPECIAL PUBLICATION 800-56B  | 147 |
| 11.2.1    | NIST SP 800-56B Sections   | 147 |
| 11.2.1.1  | Sections 1 – 3   | 147 |
| 11.2.1.2  | Section 4 Key Establishment Schemes Overview                                 | 147 |
| 11.2.1.3  | Section 5 Cryptographic Elements   | 147 |
| 11.2.1.4  | Section 6 RSA Key Pairs  | 149 |
| 11.2.1.5  | Section 7 IFC Primitives and Operations                                      | 152 |
| 11.2.1.6  | Section 8 Key Agreement Schemes  | 152 |
| 11.2.1.7  | Section 9 IFC based Key Transport Schemes                                    | 152 |
| 11.2.1.8  | Section 10 Key Recovery  | 153 |
| 11.2.1.9  | Section 11 Implementation Validation   | 153 |
| 11.2.1.10 | Appendix A: Summary of Differences between this Recommendation and ANS X9.44 |     |
| (Informat | tive)  | 153 |
| 11.2.1.11 | Appendix B: Data Conversions (Normative)                                     | 153 |
| 11.2.1.12 | Appendix C: Prime Factor Recovery (Normative)                                | 154 |
| 11.2.1.13 | Appendix D: References (Informative)   | 154 |
|           |  |     |
| <u>12</u> | APPENDIX D: TOE BINARY LIST  | 155 |
| LIST OF   | TABLES   |     |
|           |  |     |
|           | MDF PP Threats Addressed by Windows 8.1                                      |     |
| Table 3-2 | Organizational Security Policies   | 21  |
| Table 3-3 | Secure Usage Assumptions   | 21  |
|           | Security Objectives for the TOE  |     |
|           | Security Objectives for the Operational Environment                          |     |
| Table 5-1 | TOE Security Functional Requirements   | 24  |
|           | TOE Security Assurance Requirements  |     |
|           | Standard Fields in a Windows Audit Entry                                     |     |
|           | Audit Event Categories   |     |
|           | HMAC Characteristics   |     |
|           | Cryptographic Algorithm Standards and Evaluation Methods                     |     |
| Table 6-5 | Keys Used for IPsec, TLS, and Wi-Fi  | 97  |
| Table 6-6 | TLS RFCs Implemented by Windows  | 101 |
|           | General Use Capabilities   |     |
| Table 6-8 | Device Capabilities  | 105 |
|           | Special Use Capabilities   |     |
|           | 0 Mobile Device Management Capabilities                                      |     |
|           | 1 Supporting Hardware  |     |
| Table 8-1 | Rationale for Operations   | 124 |

| Windows 8.1, Surface Pro 3                                | Security Target |
|---|-----------------|
| Table 8-2 Requirement to Security Function Correspondence | 127             |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 9 of 155

# **1 Security Target Introduction**

This section presents the following information required for a Common Criteria (CC) evaluation:

- Identifies the Security Target (ST) and the Target of Evaluation (TOE);
- Specifies the security target conventions and conformance claims; and,
- Describes the organization of the security target.

# 1.1 Security Target, TOE, and Common Criteria (CC) Identification

ST Title: Microsoft Windows 8.1 Surface Pro 3 Security Target

ST Version: version 0.09, April 3, 2015

TOE Software Identification: The following Windows Operating Systems (OS):

• Microsoft Windows 8.1 Pro Edition (64-bit version)

The following security updates and patches must be applied to the above Windows 8.1 products:

• All critical updates as of January 31, 2015

TOE Hardware Identification: The following hardware platforms and components are included in the evaluated configuration:

• Microsoft Surface Pro 3, Windows 8.1 Pro, 64-bit, Intel Core i7, Marvell 8897 Wi-Fi a/b/g/n adapter, Bluetooth 4.0, Bluetooth LE, Intel TPM 2.0

TOE Guidance Identification: The following administrator, user, and configuration guides were evaluated as part of the TOE:

• Common Criteria Supplemental Admin Guidance along with all the documents referenced therein.

Evaluation Assurance: As specified in section 5.2.1 and specific Assurance Activities associated with the security functional requirements from section 5.2.2.

CC Identification: CC for Information Technology (IT) Security Evaluation, Version 3.1, Revision 4, September 2012.

#### 1.2 CC Conformance Claims

This TOE and ST are consistent with the following specifications:

- Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation Part 2: Security functional requirements, Version 3.1, Revision 4, September 2012, extended (Part 2 extended)
- Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation Part 3: Security assurance requirements Version 3.1, Revision 4, September 2012, extended with ALC\_FLR.3 and ALC\_TSU\_EXT.1

Microsoft © 2015 Page 10 of 155

- Protection Profile for Mobile Device Fundamentals, Version 1.1, February 12, 2014 (MDF PP)
- CC Part 3 assurance requirements specified in Section 5.2.1 and Evaluation Assurance Activities specified in section 5.2.2

# 1.3 Conventions, Terminology, Acronyms

This section specifies the formatting information used in the security target.

#### 1.3.1 Conventions

The following conventions have been applied in this document:

- Security Functional Requirements (SFRs): Part 2 of the CC defines the approved set of operations that may be applied to functional requirements: iteration, assignment, selection, and refinement.
  - o Iteration: allows a component to be used more than once with varying operations.
  - o Assignment: allows the specification of an identified parameter.
  - o Selection: allows the specification of one or more elements from a list.
  - o Refinement: allows the addition of details.

The conventions for the assignment, selection, refinement, and iteration operations are described in Section 5.

• Other sections of the security target use a bold font to highlight text of special interest, such as captions.

# 1.3.2 Terminology

The following terminology is used in the security target:

| Term             | Definition  |
|------------------|---|
| Access           | Interaction between an entity and an object that results in the flow or modification of data.   |
| Access control   | Security service that controls the use of resources <sup>1</sup> and the disclosure and modification of data <sup>2</sup> .   |
| Accountability   | Tracing each activity in an IT system to the entity responsible for the activity.   |
| Active Directory | Active Directory manages enterprise identities, credentials, information protection, system and application settings through AD Domain Services, Federation Services, Certificate Services and Lightweight Directory Services.  |
| Administrator    | An authorized user who has been specifically granted the authority to manage some portion or the entire TOE and thus whose actions may affect the TOE Security Policy (TSP). Administrators may possess special privileges that provide capabilities to override portions of the TSP. |
| Assurance        | A measure of confidence that the security features of an IT system are  |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Hardware and software

Microsoft © 2015 Page 11 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Stored or communicated

|                           | sufficient to enforce the IT system's security policy.                         |
|---------------------------|--|
| Attack                    | An intentional act attempting to violate the security policy of an IT system.  |
| Authentication            | A security measure that verifies a claimed identity.                           |
| Authentication data       | The information used to verify a claimed identity.                             |
| Authorization             | Permission, granted by an entity authorized to do so, to perform functions     |
|                           | and access data.   |
| Authorized user           | An authenticated user who may, in accordance with the TOE Security             |
|                           | Policy, perform an operation.  |
| Availability              | Timely <sup>3</sup> , reliable access to IT resources.                         |
| Compromise                | Violation of a security policy.  |
| Confidentiality           | A security policy pertaining to disclosure of data.                            |
| Critical cryptographic    | Security-related information appearing in plaintext or otherwise               |
| security parameters       | unprotected form and whose disclosure or modification can compromise           |
| , parameters              | the security of a cryptographic module or the security of the information      |
|                           | protected by the module.   |
| Cryptographic boundary    | An explicitly defined contiguous perimeter that establishes the physical       |
| a. Throp. ab.iie poeiient | bounds (for hardware) or logical bounds (for software) of a cryptographic      |
|                           | module.  |
| Cryptographic key (key)   | A parameter used in conjunction with a cryptographic algorithm that            |
| ci yptograpino ney (ney)  | determines:  |
|                           | the transformation of plaintext data into ciphertext data                      |
|                           | the transformation of ciphertext data into plaintext data                      |
|                           | a digital signature computed from data   |
|                           | <ul> <li>the verification of a digital signature computed from data</li> </ul> |
|                           | a data authentication code computed from data                                  |
| Cruntagraphic madula      | The set of hardware, software, and/or firmware that implements approved        |
| Cryptographic module      | •  |
|                           | security functions, including cryptographic algorithms and key generation,     |
| Countagraphic madula      | which is contained within the cryptographic boundary.                          |
| Cryptographic module      | A precise specification of the security rules under which a cryptographic      |
| security policy           | module must operate.   |
| Defense-in-depth          | A security design strategy whereby layers of protection are utilized to        |
| D'                        | establish an adequate security posture for an IT system.                       |
| Discretionary Access      | A means of restricting access to objects based on the identity of subjects     |
| Control (DAC)             | and groups to which the objects belong. The controls are discretionary         |
|                           | meaning that a subject with a certain access permission is capable of          |
| <b>- 11.1</b>             | passing that permission (perhaps indirectly) on to any other subject.          |
| Edition                   | A distinct variation of a Windows OS version. Examples of editions are         |
|                           | Windows Server 2012 [Standard] and Windows Server 2012 Datacenter.             |
| Enclave                   | A collection of entities under the control of a single authority and having a  |
|                           | homogeneous security policy. They may be logical, or based on physical         |
|                           | location and proximity.  |
| Entity                    | A subject, object, user or external IT device.                                 |
| General-Purpose           | A general-purpose operating system is designed to meet a variety of goals,     |
| Operating System          | including protection between users and applications, fast response time        |
|                           | for interactive applications, high throughput for server applications, and     |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> According to a defined metric

Microsoft © 2015 Page 12 of 155

|                       | high overall resource utilization.   |  |
|-----------------------|--|--|
| Identity              | A means of uniquely identifying an authorized user of the TOE.   |  |
| Integrated Windows    |  |  |
| authentication        | Challenge/Response.  |  |
| Named object          | <ul> <li>An object that exhibits all of the following characteristics:</li> </ul>  |  |
|                       | The object may be used to transfer information between subjects  |  |
|                       | of differing user identities within the TOE Security Function (TSF).   |  |
|                       | Subjects in the TOE must be able to request a specific instance of   |  |
|                       | the object.  |  |
|                       | The name used to refer to a specific instance of the object must  out to be a specific instance of the object must  out to be a specific instance of the object must  out to be a specific instance of the object must |  |
|                       | exist in a context that potentially allows subjects with different user identities to request the same instance of the object.   |  |
| Object                | An entity under the control of the TOE that contains or receives   |  |
| Object                | information and upon which subjects perform operations.  |  |
| Operating environment | The total environment in which a TOE operates. It includes the physical  |  |
| operating entire      | facility and any physical, procedural, administrative and personnel  |  |
|                       | controls.  |  |
| Persistent storage    | All types of data storage media that maintain data across system boots   |  |
|                       | (e.g., hard disk, removable media).  |  |
| Public object         | An object for which the TSF unconditionally permits all entities "read"  |  |
|                       | access under the Discretionary Access Control SFP. Only the TSF or   |  |
|                       | authorized administrators may create, delete, or modify the public objects   |  |
| Resource              | A fundamental element in an IT system (e.g., processing time, disk space,  |  |
|                       | and memory) that may be used to create the abstractions of subjects and  |  |
| SChannel              | objects.  A security package (SSP) that provides network authentication between  |  |
| Schainer              | clients and servers.   |  |
| Secure State          | Condition in which all TOE security policies are enforced.   |  |
| Security attributes   | TSF data associated with subjects, objects and users that is used for the  |  |
| •                     | enforcement of the TSP.  |  |
| Security-enforcing    | A term used to indicate that the entity (e.g., module, interface, subsystem)   |  |
|                       | is related to the enforcement of the TOE security policies.  |  |
| Security-supporting   | A term used to indicate that the entity (e.g., module, interface, subsystem)   |  |
|                       | is not security-enforcing; however, the entity's implementation must still   |  |
| Conview contout       | preserve the security of the TSF.  |  |
| Security context      | The security attributes or rules that are currently in effect. For SSPI, a security context is an opaque data structure that contains security data  |  |
|                       | relevant to a connection, such as a session key or an indication of the  |  |
|                       | duration of the session.   |  |
| Security package      | The software implementation of a security protocol. Security packages are  |  |
| - /                   | contained in security support provider libraries or security support   |  |
|                       | provider/authentication package libraries.   |  |
| Security principal    | An entity recognized by the security system. Principals can include human  |  |
|                       | users as well as autonomous processes.   |  |
| Security Support      | A dynamic-link library that implements the SSPI by making one or more  |  |
| Provider (SSP)        | security packages available to applications. Each security package provides  |  |
|                       | mappings between an application's SSPI function calls and an actual  |  |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 13 of 155

|                              | security model's functions. Security packages support security protocols such as Kerberos authentication and Integrated Windows Authentication. |
|------------------------------|---|
| Security Support             | A common interface between transport-level applications. SSPI allows a  |
|                              | , , ,   |
| Provider Interface (SSPI)    | transport application to call one of several security providers to obtain an  |
|                              | authenticated connection. These calls do not require extensive knowledge  |
|                              | of the security protocol's details.   |
| Security Target (ST)         | A set of security requirements and specifications to be used as the basis for   |
|                              | evaluation of an identified TOE.  |
| Subject                      | An active entity within the TOE Scope of Control (TSC) that causes  |
|                              | operations to be performed. Subjects can come in two forms: trusted and   |
|                              | untrusted. Trusted subjects are exempt from part or all of the TOE security   |
|                              | policies. Untrusted subjects are bound by all TOE security policies.  |
| Target of Evaluation         | An IT product or system and its associated administrator and user guidance  |
| (TOE)                        | documentation that is the subject of an evaluation.   |
| Threat                       | Capabilities, intentions and attack methods of adversaries, or any  |
|                              | circumstance or event, with the potential to violate the TOE security   |
|                              | policy.   |
| Unauthorized individual      | A type of threat agent in which individuals who have not been granted   |
| Olidatilo i izca iliaividuai | access to the TOE attempt to gain access to information or functions  |
|                              | provided by the TOE.  |
| Unauthorized user            | A type of threat agent in which individuals who are registered and have   |
| Onductionized disci          | been explicitly granted access to the TOE may attempt to access   |
|                              | information or functions that they are not permitted to access.   |
| Haironad Hairre              | ·   |
| Universal Unique             | UUID is an identifier that is unique across both space and time, with   |
| Identifier (UUID)            | respect to the space of all UUIDs. A UUID can be used for multiple  |
|                              | purposes, from tagging objects with an extremely short lifetime, to reliably  |
|                              | identifying very persistent objects across a network.   |
| User                         | Any person who interacts with the TOE.  |
| User Principal Name          | An identifier used by Microsoft Active Directory that provides a user name  |
| (UPN)                        | and the Internet domain with which that username is associated in an e-   |
|                              | mail address format. The format is [AD username]@[associated domain];   |
|                              | an example would be john.smith@microsoft.com.   |
| <b>Uniform Resource</b>      | The address that is used to locate a Web site. URLs are text strings that   |
| Locator (URL)                | must conform to the guidelines in RFC 2396.   |
| Version                      | A Version refers to a release level of the Windows operating system.  |
|                              | Windows 7 and Windows 8 are different versions.   |
| Vulnerability                | A weakness that can be exploited to violate the TOE security policy.  |
| •                            | 1   |

# 1.3.3 Acronyms

The acronyms used in this security target are specified in Appendix A: List of Abbreviations

Microsoft © 2015 Page 14 of 155

Appendix A: List of Abbreviations.

# 1.4 ST Overview and Organization

The Windows 8.1 Surface Pro 3 TOE provides the following security services:

- Cryptographic support
- User data protection
- Identification and Authentication (I&A)
- Protection of the TOE Security Functions (TSF)
- TOE access/session control
- Trusted path/channel
- Security management
- Audit

This security target contains the following additional sections:

- TOE Description (Section 2): Provides an overview of the TSF and boundary.
- Security Problem Definition (Section 3): Describes the threats, organizational security policies and assumptions that pertain to the TOE.
- Security Objectives (Section 4): Identifies the security objectives that are satisfied by the TOE and the TOE operational environment.
- Security Requirements (Section 5): Presents the security functional and assurance requirements met by the TOE.
- TOE Summary Specification (TSS) (Section 6): Describes the security functions provided by the TOE to satisfy the security requirements and objectives.
- Protection Profile Conformance Claim (Section 7): Presents the rationale concerning compliance of the ST with the *Protection Profile for Mobile Device Fundamentals*.
- Rationale for Modifications to the Security Requirements (Section 8): Presents the rationale for the security objectives, requirements, and TOE Summary Specification as to their consistency, completeness and suitability.

# 2 TOE Description

The TOE includes Windows 8.1, Surface Pro 3, and those applications necessary to manage, support and configure the operating system.

# 2.1 Product Types

Windows 8.1 is a preemptive multitasking, multiprocessor, and multi-user operating system. In general, operating systems provide users with a convenient interface to manage underlying hardware. They control the allocation and manage computing resources such as processors, memory, and Input/Output (I/O) devices. Windows expands these basic operating system capabilities to controlling the allocation and managing higher level IT resources such as security principals (user or machine accounts), files, printing objects, services, window station, desktops, cryptographic keys, network ports traffic, directory

Microsoft © 2015 Page 15 of 155

objects, and web content. Multi-user operating systems such as Windows keep track of which user is using which resource, grant resource requests, account for resource usage, and mediate conflicting requests from different programs and users.

#### 2.2 Product Description

Surface Pro 3 includes:

Windows 8.1 Pro

Windows 8.1 is suited for business desktops, notebook, and convertible computers. It is the workstation product and while it can be used by itself, it is also designed to serve as a client within Windows domains.

# 2.3 Security Environment and TOE Boundary

The TOE includes both physical and logical boundaries. Its operational environment is that of a networked environment with IEEE 802.11 (Wi-Fi).

#### 2.3.1 Logical Boundaries

The logical boundary of the TOE includes:

- The **Boot Manager**, which is invoked by the computer's bootstrapping code.
- The Windows Loader which loads the operating system into the computer's memory.
- **Windows OS Resume** which reloads an image of the executing operating system from a hibernation file as part of resuming from a hibernated state.
- The **Windows Kernel** which contains device drivers for the Windows NT File System, full volume encryption, the crash dump filter, and the kernel-mode cryptographic library.
- The IPv4 / IPv6 network stack in the kernel.
- The **IPsec** module in user-mode.
- The IKE and AuthIP Keying Modules service which hosts the IKE and Authenticated Internet Protocol (AuthIP) keying modules. These keying modules are used for authentication and key exchange in Internet Protocol security (IPsec).<sup>4</sup>
- The **Remote Access Service** device driver in the kernel, which is used primarily for ad hoc or user-defined VPN connections; known as the "RAS IPsec VPN" or "RAS VPN".
- The IPsec Policy Agent service which enforces IPsec policies.
- **Windows Explorer** which can be used to manage the OS and check the integrity of Windows files and updates.
- The Windows Trusted Installer which installs updates to the Windows operating system.
- The Key Isolation Service which protects secret and private keys.
- The **App Container** which is the execution environment for the Windows Store Applications which are the only applications covered by this evaluation.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 16 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> AuthIP key exchange was not examined in the Common Criteria portion of this evaluation.

#### 2.3.2 Physical Boundaries

Physically the TOE is an x64 tablet computer. The TOE executes on processors from Intel. Refer to section 1.1 for the specific list of hardware included in the evaluation.

A set of devices may be attached as part of the TOE:

- Display Monitors
- Fixed Disk Drives (including disk drives and solid state drives)
- Removable Disk Drives (including USB storage)
- Network Adaptor
- Keyboard
- Mouse
- Printer
- Audio Adaptor
- CD-ROM Drive
- Smart Card Reader
- Trusted Platform Module (TPM) version 2.0

While this list of devices is larger than is needed to evaluate the requirements in the Mobile Device Fundamentals protection profile, it is the same set of devices as the General Purpose Operating System Protection Profile evaluation for Windows 8. By using the same set of devices for both evaluations, consumers can gain assurance by using both core OS capabilities and Mobile Device Fundamentals in combination.

The TOE does not include any network infrastructure components between the computers that comprise the distributed TOE. The security target assumes that any network connections, equipment, and cables are appropriately protected in the TOE security environment.

#### 2.4 TOE Security Services

This section summarizes the security services provided by the TOE:

- Security Audit: Windows has the ability to collect audit data, review audit logs, protect audit logs from overflow, and restrict access to audit logs. Audit information generated by the system includes the date and time of the event, the user identity that caused the event to be generated, and other event specific data. Authorized administrators can review audit logs and have the ability to search and sort audit records. Authorized Administrators can also configure the audit system to include or exclude potentially auditable events to be audited based on a wide range of characteristics. In the context of this evaluation, the protection profile requirements cover generating audit events, selecting which events should be audited, and providing secure storage for audit event entries.
- **Cryptographic Support:** Windows provides FIPS-140-2 validated cryptographic functions that support encryption/decryption, cryptographic signatures, cryptographic hashing, cryptographic key agreement, and random number generation. The TOE additionally provides support for

Microsoft © 2015 Page 17 of 155

public keys, credential management and certificate validation functions and provides support for the National Security Agency's Suite B cryptographic algorithms. Windows also provides extensive auditing support of cryptographic operations, the ability to replace cryptographic functions and random number generators with alternative implementations, and a key isolation service designed to limit the potential exposure of secret and private keys. In addition to using cryptography for its own security functions, Windows offers access to the cryptographic support functions for user-mode and kernel-mode programs. Public key certificates generated and used by Windows authenticate users and machines as well as protect both user and system data in transit.

- Software-based disk encryption: Windows implements BitLocker to provide encrypted data storage for fixed and removable volumes and protects the disk volume's encryption key with one or more intermediate keys and authorization factor
- IPsec: Windows implements IPsec to provide protected, authenticated, confidential, and tamper-proof networking between two peer computers.
- **User Data Protection**: In the context of this evaluation Windows protects user data at rest and provides secure storage of X.509v3 certificates.
- **Identification and Authentication**: In the context of this evaluation, Windows provides the ability to use, store, and protect X.509 certificates that are used for IPsec and authenticates the user to their mobile device.
- **Protection of the TOE Security Functions**: Windows provides a number of features to ensure the protection of TOE security functions. Windows protects against unauthorized data disclosure and modification by using a suite of Internet standard protocols including IPsec, IKE, and ISAKMP. Windows ensures process isolation security for all processes through private virtual address spaces, execution context, and security context. The Windows data structures defining process address space, execution context, memory protection, and security context are stored in protected kernel-mode memory. Windows includes self-testing features that ensure the integrity of executable program images and its cryptographic functions. Finally, Windows provides a trusted update mechanism to update Windows binaries itself.
- Session Locking: Windows provides the ability for a user to lock their session either immediately or after a defined interval. Windows constantly monitors the mouse, keyboard, and touch display for activity and locks the computer after a set period of inactivity. Windows allows an authorized administrator to configure the system to display a logon banner before the logon dialog.
- Trusted Path for Communications: Windows uses the IPsec suite of protocols to provide a Virtual Private Network Connection (VPN) between itself, acting as a VPN client, and a VPN gateway in addition to providing protected communications for HTTPS and TLS.
- **Security Management:** Windows includes several functions to manage security policies. Policy management is controlled through a combination of access control, membership in administrator groups, and privileges.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 18 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> This option is not included in the Windows Common Criteria evaluation.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 19 of 155

# 3 Security Problem Definition

The security problem definition consists of the threats to security, organizational security policies, and usage assumptions as they relate to Windows 8.1. The assumptions, threats, and policies are copied from the Protection Profile for Mobile Device Fundamentals ("MDF PP").

# 3.1 Threats to Security

Table 3-1 presents known or presumed threats to protected resources that are addressed by Windows 8.1.

Table 3-1 MDF PP Threats Addressed by Windows 8.1

| Threat      | Description   |
|-------------|---|
| T.EAVESDROP | <b>Network Eavesdropping</b> : An attacker is positioned on a wireless communications channel or elsewhere on the network infrastructure. Attackers may monitor and gain access to data exchanged between the Mobile Device and other endpoints.  |
| T.NETWORK   | Network Attack: An attacker is positioned on a wireless communications channel or elsewhere on the network infrastructure. Attackers may initiate communications with the Mobile Device or alter communications between the Mobile Device and other endpoints in order to compromise the Mobile Device. These attacks include malicious software update of any applications or system software on the device. These attacks also include malicious web pages or email attachments which are usually delivered to devices over the network.  |
| T.PHYSICAL  | Physical Access: The loss or theft of the Mobile Device may give rise to loss of confidentiality of user data including credentials. These physical access threats may involve attacks which attempt to access the device through external hardware ports, through its user interface, and also through direct and possibly destructive access to its storage media. The goal of such attacks is to access data from a lost or stolen device which is not expected to return to its user.  Note: Defending against device re-use after physical compromise is   |
|             | out of scope for this security target.  |
| T.FLAWAPP   | Malicious or Flawed Application: Applications loaded onto the Mobile Device may include malicious or exploitable code. This code could be included intentionally by its developer or unknowingly by the developer, perhaps as part of a software library. Malicious apps may attempt to exfiltrate data to which they have access. They may also conduct attacks against the platform's system software which will provide them with additional privileges and the ability to conduct further malicious activities. Malicious applications may be able to control the device's sensors (GPS, camera, microphone) to |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 20 of 155

|              | gather intelligence about the user's surroundings even when those activities do not involve data resident or transmitted from the device. Flawed applications may give an attacker access to perform network-based or physical attacks that otherwise would have been prevented.  |
|--------------|---|
| T.PERSISTENT | Persistent Access: Persistent access to a device by an attacker implies that the device has lost integrity and cannot regain it. The device has likely lost this integrity due to some other threat vector, yet the continued access by an attacker constitutes an on-going threat in itself. In this case the device and its data may be controlled by an adversary at least as well as by its legitimate owner. |

# 3.2 Organizational Security Policies

An organizational security policy is a set of rules or procedures imposed by an organization upon its operations to protect its sensitive data and IT assets. **Table 3-2** describes organizational security policies that are addressed by Windows 8.1 which are necessary for conformance to the MDF PP.

**Table 3-2 Organizational Security Policies** 

| Security Policy | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| [None]          | There are no Organizational Security Policies for the Mobile Device |
|                 | protection profile.   |

# 3.3 Secure Usage Assumptions

Table 3-3 describes the core security aspects of the environment in which Windows 8.1 is intended to be used. It includes information about the physical, personnel, procedural, and connectivity aspects of the environment.

The following specific conditions are assumed to exist in an environment where the TOE is employed in order to conform to the MDF PP:

**Table 3-3 Secure Usage Assumptions** 

| Assumption   | Description   |
|--------------|---|
| A.CONFIG     | It is assumed that the TOE's security functions are configured correctly in a manner to ensure that the TOE security policies will be enforced on all applicable network traffic flowing among the attached networks. |
| A.NOTIFY     | It is assumed that the mobile user will immediately notify the administrator if the Mobile Device is lost or stolen.  |
| A.PRECAUTION | It is assumed that the mobile user exercises precautions to reduce<br>the risk of loss or theft of the Mobile Device.   |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 21 of 155

# **4** Security Objectives

This section defines the security objectives of the TOE and its supporting environment. Security objectives, categorized as either TOE security objectives or objectives by the supporting environment, reflect the stated intent to counter identified threats, comply with any organizational security policies identified, or address identified assumptions. All of the identified threats, organizational policies, and assumptions are addressed under one of the categories below.

# **4.1 TOE Security Objectives**

**Table 4-1** describes the security objectives for Windows 8.1 which are needed to comply with the MDF PP.

| Security Objective | Source  |
|--------------------|---|
| O.COMMS            | The TOE will provide the capability to communicate using one (or more) standard protocols as a means to maintain the confidentiality of data that are transmitted outside of the TOE.   |
| O.STORAGE          | The TOE will provide the capability to encrypt all user and enterprise data and authentication keys to ensure the confidentiality of data that it stores.   |
| O.CONFIG           | The TOE will provide the capability to configure and apply security policies. This ensures the Mobile Device can protect user and enterprise data that it may store or process.   |
| O.AUTH             | The TOE will provide the capability to authenticate the user and endpoints of a trusted path to ensure they are communicating with an authorized entity with appropriate privileges.  |
| O.INTEGRITY        | The TOE will provide the capability to perform self-tests to ensure the integrity of critical functionality, software/firmware and data has been maintained. The TOE will also provide a means to verify the integrity of downloaded updates. |

**Table 4-1 Security Objectives for the TOE** 

# 4.2 Security Objectives for the Operational Environment

The TOE is assumed to be complete and self-contained and, as such, is not dependent upon any other products to perform properly. However, certain objectives with respect to the general operating environment must be met. **Table 4-2** describes the security objectives for the operational environment as specified in the MDF PP.

**Table 4-2 Security Objectives for the Operational Environment** 

| Environment Objective | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| OE.CONFIG             | TOE administrators will configure the Mobile Device security     |
|                       | functions correctly to create the intended security policy.      |
| OE.NOTIFY             | The Mobile User will immediately notify the administrator if the |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 22 of 155

|               | Mobile Device is lost or stolen.                                    |
|---------------|---|
| OE.PRECAUTION | The Mobile User exercises precautions to reduce the risk of loss or |
|               | theft of the Mobile Device.   |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 23 of 155

# 5 Security Requirements

The section defines the Security Functional Requirements (SFRs) and Security Assurance Requirements (SARs) for the TOE. The requirements in this section have been drawn from the Protection Profile for Mobile Device Fundamentals, Version 1.1, February 12, 2014, the Common Criteria.

#### **Conventions:**

Where requirements are drawn from the MDF PP, the requirements are copied verbatim, except for some changes to required identifiers to match the iteration convention of this document, from that protection profile and only operations performed in this security target are identified.

The extended requirements, extended component definitions and extended requirement conventions in this security target are drawn from the protection profile; the security target reuses the conventions from the protection profile which include the use of the word "Extended" and the "\_EXT" identifier to denote extended functional requirements. The security target assumes that the protection profile correctly defines the extended components and so they are not reproduced in the security target.

Where applicable the following conventions are used to identify operations:

- Iteration: Iterated requirements (components and elements) are identified with letter following the base component identifier. For example, iterations of FMT\_MOF.1 are identified in a manner similar to FMT\_MOF.1(Audit) (for the component) and FCS\_COP.1.1(Audit) (for the elements).
- Assignment: Assignments are identified in brackets and bold (e.g., [assigned value]).
- Selection: Selections are identified in brackets, bold, and italics (e.g., [selected value]).
  - Assignments within selections are identified using the previous conventions, except that
    the assigned value would also be italicized and extra brackets would occur (e.g.,
    [selected value [assigned value]]).
- **Refinement**: Refinements are identified using bold text (e.g., **added text**) for additions and strike-through text (e.g., <del>deleted text</del>) for deletions.

#### **5.1 TOE Security Functional Requirements**

This section specifies the SFRs for the TOE.

**Table 5-1 TOE Security Functional Requirements** 

| Requirement Class              | Requirement Component   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Security Audit (FAU)           | Audit Data Generation (FAU_GEN.1)                                       |
|                                | Security Audit Event Selection (FAU_SEL.1)                              |
|                                | Extended: Audit Storage Protection (FAU_STG_EXT.1)                      |
| Cryptographic<br>Support (FCS) | Cryptographic Key Generation for Key Establishment (FCS_CKM.1(ASYM KA)) |
|                                | Cryptographic Key Generation for Authentication (FCS_CKM.1(ASYM AU))    |
|                                | Cryptographic Key Generation for WLAN (FCS_CKM.1(WLAN))                 |
|                                | Cryptographic Key Distribution for WLAN (FCS_CKM.2)                     |
|                                | Extended: Cryptographic Key Support for Root Encryption Key             |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 24 of 155

| 1                                       | (500 000 505 1)   |
|---|---|
|   | (FCS_CKM_EXT.1)   |
|   | Extended: Cryptographic Key Random Generation for Data Encryption Keys  |
|   | (FCS_CKM_EXT.2)   |
|   | Extended: Cryptographic Key Generation for Key Encryption Keys  |
|   | (FCS_CKM_EXT.3)   |
|   | Extended: Cryptographic Key Destruction (FCS_CKM_EXT.4)   |
|   | Extended: TSF Wipe (FCS_CKM_EXT.5)  |
|   | Extended: Cryptographic Salt Generation (FCS_CKM_EXT.6)   |
|   | Cryptographic Operation for Data Encryption/Decryption (FCS_COP.1(SYM))   |
|   | Cryptographic Operation for Hashing (FCS_COP.1(HASH))   |
|   | Cryptographic Operation for Signature Algorithms (FCS_COP.1(SIGN))  |
|   | Cryptographic Operation for Keyed Hash Algorithms (FCS_COP.1(HMAC))   |
|   | Cryptographic Operation for Password Based Key Derivation   |
|   | (FCS_COP.1(PBKD))   |
|   | Extended: Initialization Vector Generation (FCS_IV_EXT.1)   |
|   | Extended: Random Bit Generation (FCS_RBG_EXT.1)   |
|   | Extended: Cryptographic Algorithm Services (FCS SRV EXT.1)  |
|   | Extended: Cryptographic Key Storage (FCS_STG_EXT.1)   |
|   | Extended: Encrypted Cryptographic Key Storage (FCS_STG_EXT.2)   |
|   | Extended: Integrity of Encrypted Key Storage (FCS_STG_EXT.3)  |
|   | Extended: EAP TLS Protocol (FCS_TLS_EXT.1)  |
|   | Extended: TLS Protocol (FCS_TLS_EXT.2)  |
|   | Extended: HTTPS Protocol (FCS_HTTPS_EXT.1)  |
| User Data Protection                    | Extended: Security Attribute Based Access Control (FDP_ACF_EXT.1)   |
| (FDP)                                   | Extended: Data at Rest Protection (FDP_DAR_EXT.1)   |
| (FDF)                                   | Extended: Certificate Data Storage (FDP_STG_EXT.1)  |
|   |   |
| Idoutification 0                        | Extended: Subset Information Flow Control (FDP_IFC_EXT.1)   |
| Identification &                        | Extended: Authorization Failure Handling (FIA_AFL_EXT.1)  |
| Authentication (FIA)                    | Extended: Bluetooth Authentication (FIA_BLT_EXT.1)  |
|   | Extended: PAE Authentication (FIA_PAE_EXT.1)  |
|   | Extended: Password Management (FIA_PMG_EXT.1)   |
|   | Extended: Authorization Throttling (FIA_TRT_EXT.1)  |
|   | Protected Authorization Feedback (FIA_UAU.7)  |
|   | Extended: Authentication for Cryptographic Operation (FIA_UAU_EXT.1)  |
|   | Extended: Timing of Authentication (FIA_UAU_EXT.2)  |
|   | Extended: Re-Authorizing (FIA_UAU_EXT.3)  |
|   | Extended: Validation of Certificates (FIA_X509_EXT.1)   |
|   | Extended: X.509 Certificate Authentication (FIA_X509_EXT.2)   |
|   | Extended: Request Validation of Certificates (FIA_X509_EXT.3)   |
| Security                                | Management of Security Functions Behavior by the User (FMT_MOF.1(USER))   |
| Management (FMT)                        | Management of Security Functions Behavior by the Organization   |
|   | (FMT_MOF.1(ORG))  |
|   |   |
|   | Extended: Specification of Remediation Actions (FMT_SMF_EXT.1)  |
| Protection of the TSF                   | ·   |
| (FPT)                                   | (FPT_AEX_EXT.1)   |
| Management (FMT)  Protection of the TSF | Extended: Re-Authorizing (FIA_UAU_EXT.3)  Extended: Validation of Certificates (FIA_X509_EXT.1)  Extended: X.509 Certificate Authentication (FIA_X509_EXT.2)  Extended: Request Validation of Certificates (FIA_X509_EXT.3)  Management of Security Functions Behavior by the User (FMT_MOF.1(USER))  Management of Security Functions Behavior by the Organization (FMT_MOF.1(ORG))  Specifications of Management Functions (FMT_SMF.1)  Extended: Specification of Remediation Actions (FMT_SMF_EXT.1)  Extended: Anti-Exploitation Services for Address Space Layout Randomization |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 25 of 155

#### **5.1.1 Security Audit (FAU)**

#### 5.1.1.1 Audit Data Generation (FAU\_GEN.1)

#### FAU\_GEN.1.1

The TSF shall be able to generate an audit record of the following auditable events:

- 1. Start-up and shutdown of the audit functions;
- 2. All administrative actions;
- 3. User authentication attempts and success/failure of the attempt;
- 4. Start-up and shutdown of the OS and kernel
- 5. Failures of security functions;
- 6. Integrity verification failures;
- 7. Software updates;
- 8. Insertion or removal of removable media;
- 9. Establishment of a synchronizing connection;
- 10. Establishment of a trusted channel;
- 11. [Audit records reaching an administrator-configurable percentage of audit capacity, [none]].

#### FAU\_GEN.1.2

The TSF shall record within each audit record at least the following information:

Date and time of the event, type of event, subject identity, and the outcome (success or failure) of the event.

#### 5.1.1.2 Security Audit Event Selection (FAU\_SEL.1)

#### FAU\_SEL.1.1

The TSF shall be able to select the set of events to be audited from the set of all auditable events based on the following attributes:

- a) event type;
- b) success of auditable security events;

Microsoft © 2015 Page 26 of 155

- c) failure of auditable security events; and
- d) [subject or user identity].

#### 5.1.1.3 Extended: Audit Storage Protection (FAU\_STG\_EXT.1)

**FAU\_STG\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall overwrite the oldest stored audit records if the audit trail is full. **FAU\_STG\_EXT.1.2** The TSF shall prohibit unauthorized modification and deletion of the audit trail by unauthorized users.

#### **5.1.2** Cryptographic Support (FCS)

The functional requirements described in this are only those portions of the cryptographic functions implemented within Windows which are needed to meet the requirements of the Mobile Device Fundamentals protection profile. The intent is to describe only a subset of the product rather than a comprehensive review of Windows.

#### 5.1.2.1 Cryptographic Key Generation for Key Establishment (FCS\_CKM.1(ASYM KA))

**Application Note:** FCS\_CKM.1(ASYM KA) corresponds to FCS\_CKM.1(1) in the MDF protection profile.

FCS\_CKM.1.1(ASYM KA)

The TSF shall generate asymmetric cryptographic keys used for key establishment in accordance with:

- NIST Special Publication 800-56B, "Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key Establishment Schemes Using Integer Factorization Cryptography" for RSA-based key establishment schemes and
  - NIST Special Publication 800-56A, "Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key Establishment Schemes Using Discrete Logarithm Cryptography" for finite field- based key establishment schemes;
  - NIST Special Publication 800-56A, "Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key Establishment Schemes Using Discrete Logarithm
    Cryptography" for elliptic curve- based key establishment
    schemes and implementing "NIST curves" P-256, P-384 and [P521] (as defined in FIPS PUB 186-4, "Digital Signature Standard")

and specified cryptographic key sizes equivalent to, or greater than, a symmetric key strength of 112 bits.

#### 5.1.2.2 Cryptographic Key Generation for Authentication (FCS\_CKM.1(ASYM AU))

Application Note: FCS CKM.1(ASYM AU) corresponds to FCS CKM.1(2) in the MDF protection profile.

FCS\_CKM.1.1(ASYM AU)

The TSF shall generate asymmetric cryptographic keys used for authentication in accordance with a specified cryptographic key generation algorithm

- FIPS PUB 186-4, "Digital Signature Standard (DSS)", Appendix B.3 for RSA schemes;
- FIPS PUB 186-4, "Digital Signature Standard (DSS)", Appendix B.4 for ECDSA schemes and implementing "NIST curves" P-256, P-384 and [P-521];

and specified cryptographic key sizes [equivalent to, or greater than, a

Microsoft © 2015 Page 27 of 155

symmetric key strength of 112 bits].

#### 5.1.2.3 Cryptographic Key Generation for WLAN (FCS\_CKM.1(WLAN))

Application Note: FCS CKM.1(WLAN) corresponds to FCS CKM.1(3) in the MDF protection profile.

FCS\_CKM.1.1(WLAN) The TSF shall generate symmetric cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key generation algorithm [PRF-384] and specified cryptographic key sizes [128 bits] using a Random Bit Generator as specified in FCS RBG EXT.1 that meet the following: [IEEE 802.11-2012].

#### 5.1.2.4 Cryptographic Key Distribution for WLAN (FCS\_CKM.2)

FCS CKM.2.1

The TSF shall decrypt Group Temporal Key (GTK) in accordance with a specified cryptographic key distribution method [AES Key Wrap in an EAPOL-Key frame] that meets the following: [NIST SP 800-38F, IEEE 802.11-2012 for the packet format and timing considerations] and does not expose the cryptographic keys.

#### 5.1.2.5 Extended: Cryptographic Key Support for Root Encryption Key (FCS\_CKM\_EXT.1)

The TSF shall support a [hardware-isolated] REK with a [symmetric] key of FCS\_CKM\_EXT.1.1 strength [256 bits].

FCS CKM EXT.1.2 System software on the TSF shall be able only to request [NIST SP 800-108 key derivation by the key and shall not be able to read, import, or export a REK.

FCS\_CKM\_EXT.1.3 A REK shall be generated by a RBG in accordance with FCS RBG EXT.1.

# 5.1.2.6 Extended: Cryptographic Key Random Generation for Data Encryption Keys (FCS\_CKM\_EXT.2)

FCS\_CKM\_EXT.2.1 All DEKs shall be randomly generated with entropy corresponding to the security strength of AES key sizes of [128, 256] bits.

#### 5.1.2.7 Extended: Cryptographic Key Generation for Key Encryption Keys (FCS\_CKM\_EXT.3)

The TSF shall use [asymmetric KEKs of [112 bits of security strength] security FCS CKM EXT.3.1 **strength, [256-bit] symmetric KEKs**] corresponding to at least the security strength of the keys encrypted by the KEK.

The TSF shall generate all KEKs using one or more of the following methods: FCS\_CKM\_EXT.3.2

> a) derive the KEK from a Password Authentication Factor using PBKDF and

[

1.

- b) generate the KEK using an RBG that meets this profile (as specified in FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1)
- c) generate the KEK using a key generation scheme that meets this profile (as specified in FCS\_CKM.1(1))<sup>6</sup>
- d) Combine the KEK from other KEKs in a way that preserves the effective entropy of each factor by [selection: using an XOR operation, encrypting one key with another]

Microsoft © 2015 Page 28 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup> FCS CKM.1(1) in the protection profile corresponds to FCS CKM.1(ASYM KA).

#### 5.1.2.8 Extended: Cryptographic Key Destruction (FCS\_CKM\_EXT.4)

FCS\_CKM\_EXT.4.1 The TSF shall destroy cryptographic keys in accordance with the specified cryptographic key destruction method

- by clearing the KEK encrypting the target key,
- in accordance with the following rules:
  - For volatile EEPROM the destruction shall be executed by a single direct overwrite consisting of a pseudo random pattern using the TSF's RBG (as specified in FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1), followed a read-verify.
  - For volatile flash memory the destruction shall be executed by [a single direct overwrite consisting of zeros followed by a read-verify, a block erase followed by a read-verify.]

FCS\_CKM\_EXT.4.2

The TSF shall destroy all plaintext keying material and cryptographic security parameters when no longer needed.

#### 5.1.2.9 Extended: TSF Wipe (FCS\_CKM\_EXT.5)

1

FCS\_CKM\_EXT.5.1 The TSF shall wipe all protected data by

 Cryptographically erasing the encrypted DEKs and/or the KEKs in non-volatile memory by following the requirements in FCS\_CKM\_EXT.4.1;

**FCS\_CKM\_EXT.5.2** The TSF shall perform a power cycle on conclusion of the wipe procedure.

#### 5.1.2.10 Extended: Cryptographic Salt Generation (FCS\_CKM\_EXT.6)

FCS\_CKM\_EXT.6.1 The TSF shall generate all salts using a RBG that meets [FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1].

#### 5.1.2.11 Cryptographic Operation for Data Encryption/Decryption (FCS\_COP.1(SYM))

Application Note: FCS COP.1(SYM) corresponds to FCS COP.1(1) in the MDF protection profile.

FCS\_COP.1.1(SYM)

The TSF shall perform [encryption/decryption] in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm

- AES-CBC (as defined in NIST SP 800-38A) mode,
- AES-CCMP (as defined in FIPS PUB 197, NIST SP 800-38C and IEEE 802.11- 2012), and
- AES Key Wrap (KW) (as defined in NIST SP 800-38F), AES Key Wrap with Padding (KWP) (as defined in NIST SP 800-38F), AES-GCM (as defined in NIST SP 800-38D), AES-CCM (as defined in NIST SP 800-38C)]

and cryptographic key sizes 128-bit key sizes and [256-bit key sizes].

Microsoft © 2015 Page 29 of 155

#### 5.1.2.12 Cryptographic Operation for Hashing (FCS\_COP.1(HASH))

**Application Note:** FCS COP.1(HASH) corresponds to FCS COP.1(2) in the MDF protection profile.

FCS\_COP.1.1(HASH)

The TSF shall perform [cryptographic hashing] in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm SHA-1 and [SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512] and message digest sizes 160 and [256, 384, 512 bits] that meet the following: [FIPS Pub 180-4].

#### 5.1.2.13 Cryptographic Operation for Signature Algorithms (FCS\_COP.1(SIGN))

Application Note: FCS COP.1(SIGN) corresponds to FCS COP.1(3) in the MDF protection profile.

FCS COP.1.1(SIGN)

The TSF shall perform [cryptographic signature services (generation and verification)] in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm

- FIPS PUB 186-4, "Digital Signature Standard (DSS)", Section 4 for RSA schemes
- FIPS PUB 186-4, "Digital Signature Standard (DSS)", Section 5 for ECDSA schemes and implementing "NIST curves" P-256, P-384 and [P-*521]* 1

and cryptographic key sizes [equivalent to, or greater than, a symmetric key strength of 112 bits].

#### 5.1.2.14 Cryptographic Operation for Keyed Hash Algorithms (FCS\_COP.1(HMAC))

**Application Note:** FCS COP.1(HMAC) corresponds to FCS COP.1(4) in the MDF protection profile.

FCS\_COP.1.1(HMAC) The TSF shall perform [keyed-hash message authentication] in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm HMAC-SHA-1 and [HMAC-SHA-256, HMAC-SHA-384, HMAC-SHA-512] and cryptographic key sizes [128, 256] and message digest sizes 160 and [256, 384, 512] bits that meet the following: [FIPS Pub 198-1, "The Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Code, and FIPS Pub 180-4, "Secure Hash Standard].

#### 5.1.2.15 Cryptographic Operation for Password Based Key Derivation (FCS\_COP.1(PBKD))

Application Note: FCS\_COP.1(PBKD) corresponds to FCS\_COP.1(5) in the MDF protection profile.

FCS\_COP.1.1(PBKD) The TSF shall perform [Password-based Key Derivation Functions] in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm [HMAC-[SHA-1, SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512]] and output cryptographic key sizes [128, 256] that meet the following: [NIST SP 800-132].

#### 5.1.2.16 Extended: Initialization Vector Generation (FCS\_IV\_EXT.1)

FCS\_IV\_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall generate IVs in accordance with Table 11: References and IV Requirements for NIST-approved Cipher Modes. 7

Microsoft © 2015 Page 30 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> This refers to Table 11 of the MDF PP.

#### 5.1.2.17 Extended: Random Bit Generation (FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1)

- FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall perform all deterministic random bit generation services in accordance with [NIST Special Publication 800-90A using [CTR\_DRBG (AES), Dual\_EC\_DRBG (any)]].
- FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1.2 The deterministic RBG shall be seeded by an entropy source that accumulates entropy from [a software-based noise source, TSF-hardware-based noise source] with a minimum of [128 bits, 256 bits] of entropy at least equal to the greatest security strength (according to NIST SP 800-57) of the keys and hashes that it will generate.
- **FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1.3** The TSF shall be capable of providing output of the RBG to applications running on the TSF that request random bits.

#### 5.1.2.18 Extended: Cryptographic Algorithm Services (FCS\_SRV\_EXT.1)

- **FCS\_SRV\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall provide a mechanism for [**Windows Store** applications] to request the TSF to perform the following cryptographic operations:
  - FCS COP.1(SYM 1)
  - FCS\_COP.1(SIGN 3)
  - FCS COP.1(HASH 2)
  - FCS COP.1(HMAC 4)
  - FCS COP.1(PBKD 5)
  - FCS CKM.1(ASYM KA 1)
  - [FCS\_CKM.1(ASYM AU 2)].

#### 5.1.2.19 Extended: Cryptographic Key Storage (FCS\_STG\_EXT.1)

- **FCS\_STG\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall provide secure key storage for asymmetric private keys and [symmetric keys, persistent secrets].
- FCS\_STG\_EXT.1.2 The TSF shall be capable of importing keys/secrets into the secure key storage upon request of [the user, the administrator] and [applications running on the TSF].
- **FCS\_STG\_EXT.1.3** The TSF shall be capable of destroying keys/secrets in the secure key storage upon request of [*the user, the administrator*].
- FCS\_STG\_EXT.1.4 The TSF shall have the capability to allow only the application that imported the key/secret the use of the key/secret. Exceptions may only be explicitly authorized by [the user, the administrator].
- FCS\_STG\_EXT.1.5 The TSF shall allow only the application that imported the key/secret to request that the key/secret be destroyed. Exceptions may only be explicitly authorized by [the user, the administrator].

#### 5.1.2.20 Extended: Encrypted Cryptographic Key Storage (FCS\_STG\_EXT.2)

FCS\_STG\_EXT.2.1 The TSF shall encrypt all DEKs and KEKs and [all software- based key storage,] by KEKs that are

- 1) Protected by the REK with [
  - a. encryption by a REK,
  - b. encryption by a KEK chaining to a REK],
- 2) Protected by the REK and the password with [
  - a. encryption by a REK and the password-derived KEK
  - b. encryption by a KEK chaining to a REK and the password-

Microsoft © 2015 Page 31 of 155

1.

#### derived KEK

FCS\_STG\_EXT.2.2

DEKs and KEKs and [no other keys] shall be encrypted using one of the following methods: [SP800-56B key establishment scheme, using AES in the [CCM, CBC mode]].

#### 5.1.2.21 Extended: Integrity of Encrypted Key Storage (FCS\_STG\_EXT.3)

FCS\_STG\_EXT.3.1

The TSF shall protect the integrity of any encrypted KEK by [

- [CCM] cipher mode for encryption according to FCS\_STG\_EXT.2;
- a keyed hash (FCS\_COP.1(4)) using a key protected by FCS\_STG\_EXT.2; 8
- **FCS\_STG\_EXT.3.2** The TSF shall verify the integrity of the [*hash*] of the stored key prior to use of the key.

#### 5.1.2.22 Extended: EAP TLS Protocol (FCS\_TLS\_EXT.1)

FCS\_TLS\_EXT.1.1

The TSF shall implement the EAP-TLS protocol as specified in RFC 5216 implementing TLS 1.0 (RFC 2246) and [*none*] supporting the following ciphersuites: [

Mandatory Ciphersuites in accordance with RFC 3268:

TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_CBC\_SHA

• TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_256\_CBC\_SHA
]
]

FCS\_TLS\_EXT.1.2

The TSF shall verify that the server certificate presented for EAP-TLS [chains to one of the specified CAs, contains the specified FQDN of the acceptable authentication server certificate].

#### 5.1.2.23 Extended: TLS Protocol (FCS\_TLS\_EXT.2)

FCS\_TLS\_EXT.2.1

The TSF shall implement one or more of the following protocols TLS 1.2 (RFC 5246) and [*TLS 1.0 (RFC 2246), TLS 1.1 (RFC 4346)*] supporting the following ciphersuites:

Mandatory Ciphersuites:

O TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_CBC\_SHA

[

- TLS RSA WITH AES 256 CBC SHA
- TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_CBC\_SHA256 as defined in RFC 5246
- TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_256\_CBC\_SHA256 as defined in RFC 5246
- TLS\_ECDHE\_ECDSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_GCM\_SHA256 as defined in RFC 5289
- TLS\_ECDHE\_ECDSA\_WITH\_AES\_256\_GCM\_SHA384 as defined in RFC 5289
- TLS\_ECDHE\_ECDSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_CBC\_SHA256 as defined in RFC 6460

Microsoft © 2015 Page 32 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>8</sup> FCS COP.1(4) in the protection profile is FCS COP.1(HMAC) in the security target.

• TLS\_ECDHE\_ECDSA\_WITH\_AES\_256\_CBC\_SHA384 as defined in RFC 6460]

]

**FCS\_TLS\_EXT.2.2** The TSF shall not establish a trusted channel if the distinguished name (DN) contained in a certificate does not match the expected DN for the peer.

#### 5.1.2.24 Extended: HTTPS Protocol (FCS\_HTTPS\_EXT.1)

FCS\_HTTPS\_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall implement the HTTPS protocol that complies with RFC 2818.

FCS\_HTTPS\_EXT.1.2 The TSF shall implement HTTPS using TLS (FCS\_TLS\_EXT.2).

#### **5.1.3** User Data Protection (FDP)

#### 5.1.3.1 Extended: Security Attribute Based Access Control (FDP\_ACF\_EXT.1)

**FDP\_ACF\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall provide a mechanism to restrict the system services that are accessible to an application.

#### 5.1.3.2 Extended: Data at Rest Protection (FDP\_DAR\_EXT.1)

**FDP\_DAR\_EXT.1.1** Encryption shall cover all protected data.

**FDP\_DAR\_EXT.1.2** Encryption shall be performed using DEKs with AES in the [*CBC*] mode with key size [*128,256*] bits.

#### 5.1.3.3 Extended: Certificate Data Storage (FDP\_STG\_EXT.1)

**FDP\_STG\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall provide protected storage for the Trust Anchor Database.

#### 5.1.3.4 Extended: Subset Information Flow Control (FDP\_IFC\_EXT.1)

FDP\_IFC\_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall [enable all IP traffic (other than IP traffic required to establish the VPN connection) to flow through the IPsec VPN client].

#### **5.1.4** Identification and Authentication (FIA)

#### 5.1.4.1 Extended: Authorization Failure Handling (FIA\_AFL\_EXT.1)

FIA\_AFL\_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall detect when [a configurable positive integer within [a range of acceptable values from 1 to 999]] of unsuccessful authentication attempts occur related to [last successful authentication by that user].9

FIA\_AFL\_EXT.1.2 When the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts has been [surpassed], the TSF shall [perform [full wipe of all protected data, a remediation action set by the administrator].

#### 5.1.4.2 Extended: Bluetooth Authentication (FIA\_BLT\_EXT.1)

**FIA\_BLT\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall require Bluetooth mutual authentication between devices prior to any data transfer over the Bluetooth link.

#### 5.1.4.3 Extended: PAE Authentication (FIA\_PAE\_EXT.1)

**FIA\_PAE\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall conform to [IEEE Standard 802.1X] for a Port Access Entity (PAE) in the "Supplicant" role.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 33 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> Note that a lockout value of 0 denotes the account will never be locked out.

#### 5.1.4.4 Extended: Password Management (FIA\_PMG\_EXT.1)

**FIA\_PMG\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall support the following for the Password Authentication Factor:

- 1. Passwords shall be able to be composed of any combination of [**upper and lower case characters**], number, and special characters: ["!", "@", "#", "\$", "%", "%", "%", "%", """];
- 2. Password length up to [at least 15] characters shall be supported.

#### 5.1.4.5 Extended: Authorization Throttling (FIA\_TRT\_EXT.1)

The TSF shall limit automated user authentication attempts by [enforcing a delay between incorrect authentication attempts]. The minimum delay shall be such that no more than [10] attempts can be attempted per [500 milliseconds].

#### 5.1.4.6 Protected Authorization Feedback (FIA\_UAU.7)

**FIA\_UAU.7.1** The TSF shall provide only [obscured feedback to the device's display] to the user while the authentication is in progress.

#### 5.1.4.7 Extended: Authentication for Cryptographic Operation (FIA\_UAU\_EXT.1)

**FIA\_UAU\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall require the user to present the Password Authentication Factor prior to decryption of protected data and keys at startup.

#### 5.1.4.8 Extended: Timing of Authentication (FIA\_UAU\_EXT.2)

**FIA\_UAU\_EXT.2.1** The TSF shall allow [*no actions*] on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is authenticated.

**FIA\_UAU\_EXT.2.2** The TSF shall require each user to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

#### 5.1.4.9 Extended: Re-Authorizing (FIA\_UAU\_EXT.3)

FIA\_UAU\_EXT.3.1 The TSF shall require the user to enter the correct Password Authentication Factor when the user changes the Password Authentication Factor, and following TSF- and user-initiated locking in order to transition to the unlocked state, and [no other conditions].

#### 5.1.4.10 Extended: Validation of Certificates (FIA\_X509\_EXT.1)

**FIA\_X509\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall validate certificates in accordance with the following rules:

- RFC 5280 certificate validation and certificate path validation.
- The certificate path must terminate with a certificate in the Trust Anchor Database.
- The TSF shall validate a certificate path by ensuring the presence of the basicConstraints extension and that the cA flag is set to TRUE for all CA certificates.
- The TSF shall validate the revocation status of the certificate using [the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) as specified in RFC 2560, a Certificate Revocation List (CRL) as specified in RFC 5759].
- The TSF shall validate the extendedKeyUsage field according to the following rules:
  - Certificates used for trusted updates and executable code integrity verification shall have the Code Signing purpose (id-

Microsoft © 2015 Page 34 of 155

- kp 3 with OID 1.3.6.1.5.5.7.3.3).
- Server certificates presented for TLS shall have the Server Authentication purpose (id-kp 1 with OID 1.3.6.1.5.5.7.3.1) in the extendedKeyUsage field.
- **FIA\_X509\_EXT.1.2** The TSF shall only treat a certificate as a CA certificate if the basicConstraints extension is present and the CA flag is set to TRUE.

#### 5.1.4.11 Extended: X.509 Certificate Authentication (FIA\_X509\_EXT.2)

| FIA_X509_EXT.2.1 | The TSF shall use X.509v3 certificates as defined by RFC 5280 to support   |
|------------------|--|
|                  | authentication for EAP-TLS exchanges, and [IPsec, TLS, HTTPS,], and [code  |
|                  | signing for system software updates, code signing for mobile applications, |
|                  | code signing for integrity verification, [none]].                          |
| FIA_X509_EXT.2.2 | When the TSF cannot establish a connection to determine the validity of a  |
|                  | certificate the TSF shall (allow the administrator to choose whether to    |

|                  | certificate, the TSF shall [allow the administrator to choose whether to accept the certificate in these cases, not accept the certificate <sup>10</sup> ]. |
|------------------|---|
| FIA X509 EXT.2.3 | The TSF shall not establish a trusted communication channel if the peer   |

| FIA_X509_EXT.2.3 | The TSF shall not establish a trusted communication channel if the peer     |
|------------------|---|
|                  | certificate is deemed invalid.  |
| FIΔ X509 FXT 2 4 | The TSF shall not [install evecute] code if the code signing certificate is |

**FIA\_X509\_EXT.2.4** The TSF shall not [*install, execute*] code if the code signing certificate is deemed invalid.

FIA\_X509\_EXT.2.5 The TSF shall generate a Certificate Request Message as specified in RFC 2986 and be able to provide the following information in the request: public key, Common Name, Organization, Organizational Unit, and Country.

#### 5.1.4.12 Extended: Request Validation of Certificates (FIA\_X509\_EXT.3)

**FIA\_X509\_EXT.3.1** The TSF shall provide a certificate validation service to applications.

**FIA\_X509\_EXT.3.2** The TSF shall respond to the requesting application with the success or failure of the validation.

#### **5.1.5** Security Management (FMT)

#### 5.1.5.1 Management of Security Functions Behavior by the User (FMT\_MOF.1(USER))

**Application Note:** FMT\_MOF.1(USER) corresponds to FMT\_MOF.1(1) in the MDF protection profile.

This functional requirement includes the full set of selections from the protection profile for readability, selections which are not used are marked with a strikethrough font.

FMT\_MOF.1.1(USER) The TSF shall restrict the ability to [perform] the functions [

- enroll the TOE in management
- 2. enable/disable the VPN protection,
- 3. enable/disable [Wi-Fi],
- 4. enable/disable data transfer capabilities over [USB port, Bluetooth],
- 5. enable/disable [personal Hotspot connections, tethered connections],
- 6. enable/disable display notification in the locked state of: [

Microsoft © 2015 Page 35 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>10</sup> Windows will not accept the certificate for validation failures for IPsec, software updates, mobile applications, and integrity verification. Windows will present the user with an option to accept the certificate for TLS/HTTPS

- a. email notifications,
- b. calendar appointments,
- c. other application-based notification]
- 7. enable/disable developer modes,
- 8. enable data at rest protection
- 9. enable removable media's data-at-rest protection,
- 10. enable/disable local authentication bypass,
- 11. configure the Access Point Name and proxy used for communications between the cellular network and other networks
- 12. configure the Bluetooth trusted channel
  - a. disable the Discoverable mode
  - b. disallow Bluetooth connections using versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, 2.0, and [assignment: other Bluetooth version numbers]
  - c. [selection: restrict Bluetooth profiles, disable legacy pairing and JustWorks pairing, and [selection: [assignment: other pairing methods], no other pairing methods]],
- 13. wipe sensitive data
- 14. import keys/secrets into the secure key storage,
- 15. destroy user-imported keys/secrets and [ [any other keys/secrets]] in the secure key storage,
- 16. remove imported X.509v3 certificates and [ [any other X.509v3 certificate ]] in the Trust Anchor Database,
- 17. approve import and removal by applications of X.509v3 certificates in the Trust Anchor Database,
- 18. configure whether to establish a trusted channel or disallow establishment if the TSF cannot establish a connection to determine the validity of a certificate,
- 19. enable/disable cellular voice functionality,
- 20.-enable/disable device messaging capabilities,
- 21. enable/disable the cellular protocols used to connect to cellular network base stations,
- 22. enable/disable voice command control of device functions,
- 23. read audit logs kept by the TSF,
- 24. configure [certificate, public-key] used to validate digital signature on applications,
- 25. approve exceptions for shared use of keys/secrets by multiple applications
- 26. approve exceptions for destruction of keys/secrets by applications that did not import the key/secret
- 27. [no other management functions]

]] to the user.

# 5.1.5.2 Management of Security Functions Behavior by the Organization (FMT\_MOF.1(ORG))

**Application Note:** FMT\_MOF.1(ORG) corresponds to FMT\_MOF.1(2) in the MDF protection profile.

This functional requirement includes the full set of selections from the protection profile for readability, selections which are not used are marked with a strikethrough font.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 36 of 155

# **FMT\_MOF.1.1(ORG)** The TSF shall restrict the ability to perform the functions [

- 1. configure password policy:
  - a. minimum password length of 6 characters
  - b. minimum password complexity, no complexity rules
  - c. maximum password lifetime, no password expiration
- 2. configure session locking policy:
  - a. screen-lock enabled/disabled
  - b. screen lock timeout of 15 minutes or less
  - c. number of authentication failures that is 10 or less
- 3. enable/disable [camera, microphone]
- 4. configure application installation policy by [
  - a. specifying authorized application repository(s),
  - b. specifying a set of allowed applications and versions (an application whitelist)
  - c. denying installation of applications],
- 5. enable/disable the VPN protection
- 6. enable/disable [Wi-Fi, mobile broadband radios, Bluetooth]
- 7. enable/disable data transfer capabilities over [],
- enable/disable [wireless remote access connections except for personal Hotspot service, personal Hotspot connections, tethered connections],
- 9. specify wireless networks (SSIDs) to which the TSF may connect
- 10. configure security policy for each wireless network:
  - a. [specify the CA(s) from which the TSF will accept WLAN
     authentication server certificate(s), specify the FQDN(s) of
     acceptable WLAN authentication server certificate(s)]
  - b. ability to specify security type
  - c. ability to specify authentication protocol
  - d. specify the client credentials to be used for authentication
  - e. [none]
- 11. enable/disable developer modes,
- 12. enable data-at rest protection,
- 13. enable removable media's data-at-rest protection,
- 14.-enable/disable local authentication bypass.
- 15. configure the Access Point Name and proxy used for communications between the cellular network and other networks
- 16. configure the Bluetooth trusted channel
  - a. disable the Discoverable mode
  - b. disallow Bluetooth connections using versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, 2.0, and [assignment: other Bluetooth version numbers]
  - c.—[selection: restrict Bluetooth profiles, disable legacy pairing and JustWorks pairing, and [selection: [assignment: other pairing methods]],
- 17. enable/disable display notification in the locked state of: [
  - a. email notifications,
  - b. calendar appointments,
  - c. contact associated with phone call notification,

Microsoft © 2015 Page 37 of 155

- d. text message notification,
- e. other application-based notifications,
- f.—nonel
- 18. import and remove X.509v3 certificates into/from the Trust Anchor Database,
- 19. configure whether to establish a trusted channel or disallow establishment if the TSF cannot establish a connection to determine the validity of a certificate,
- 20. approve import and removal by applications of X.509v3 certificates in the Trust Anchor Database,
- 21. enable/disable cellular voice functionality,
- 22. enable/disable device messaging capabilities,
- 23. enable/disable the cellular protocols used to connect to cellular network base stations.
- 24.-enable/disable voice command control of device functions,
- 25. configure [certificate] used to validate digital signature on applications,
- 26. remove applications,
- 27. update system software,
- 28. install applications,
- 29. approve exceptions for shared use of keys/secrets by multiple applications
- 30. approve exceptions for destruction of keys/secrets by applications that did not import the key/secret
- 31. **[none]**

to the administrator when the device is enrolled and according to the administrator- configured policy.

#### 5.1.5.3 Specifications of Management Functions (FMT\_SMF.1)

This functional requirement includes the full set of selections from the protection profile for readability, selections which are not used are marked with a strikethrough font.

# FMT\_SMF.1.1

The TSF shall be capable of performing the following management functions: [

- 1. configure password policy:
  - a. minimum password length of 6 characters
  - b. minimum password complexity, no complexity rules
  - c. maximum password lifetime, no password expiration
- 2. configure session locking policy:
  - a. screen-lock enabled/disabled
  - b. screen lock timeout of 15 minutes or less
  - c. number of authentication failures that is 10 or less
- 3. enable/disable the VPN protection
- 4. enable/disable [Wi-Fi, Bluetooth]
- 5. enable/disable [camera, microphone]
- 6. specify wireless networks (SSIDs) to which the TSF may connect
- 7. configure security policy for each wireless network:
  - a. [specify the CA(s) from which the TSF will accept WLAN

Microsoft © 2015 Page 38 of 155

# authentication server certificate(s), specify the FQDN(s) of acceptable WLAN authentication server certificate(s)]

- b. ability to specify security type
- c. ability to specify authentication protocol
- d. specify the client credentials to be used for authentication
- e. [none]
- 8. transition to the locked state
- 9. full wipe of protected data
- 10. configure application installation policy by [
  - a. specifying authorized application repository(s),
  - b. specifying a set of allowed applications and versions (an application whitelist)
  - c. denying installation of applications],
- 11. import keys/secrets into the secure key storage,
- 12. destroy imported keys/secrets and [ [any other keys/secrets]] in the secure key storage,
- 13. import X.509v3 certificates into the Trust Anchor Database,
- 14. remove imported X.509v3 certificates and [[any other X.509v3 certificates]] in the Trust Anchor Database,
- 15. enroll the TOE in management
- 16. remove applications
- 17. update system software
- 18. install applications
- 19. enable/disable data transfer capabilities over [USB port, Bluetooth],
- 20. enable/disable [mobile hotspot],
- 21. enable/disable developer modes,
- 22. enable data-at rest protection,
- 23. enable removable media's data-at-rest protection,
- 24. enable/disable local authentication bypass,

# 25. configure the Access Point Name and proxy used for communications between the cellular network and other networks

- 26. configure the Bluetooth trusted channel:
  - a. disable the Discoverable mode
  - b. disallow Bluetooth connections using versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, 2.0, and [assignment: other Bluetooth version numbers]
  - c. [selection: restrict Bluetooth profiles, disable legacy pairing and JustWorks pairing, and [selection: [assignment: other pairing methods], no other pairing methods]],
- 27. enable/disable display notification in the locked state of: [
  - a. email notifications,
  - b. calendar appointments,
  - c. other application-based notifications,
- 28. wipe sensitive data,
- 29. alert the administrator,
- 30. remove Enterprise applications,
- 31. approve import and removal by applications of X.509v3 certificates in the

Microsoft © 2015 Page 39 of 155

#### Trust Anchor Database,

- 32. configure whether to establish a trusted channel or disallow establishment if the TSF cannot establish a connection to determine the validity of a certificate.
- 33. enable/disable cellular voice functionality,
- 34. enable/disable device messaging capabilities,
- 35. enable/disable the cellular protocols used to connect to cellular network base stations.
- 36. enable/disable voice command control of device functions,
- 37. read audit logs kept by the TSF,
- 38. configure [certificate] used to validate digital signature on applications,
- 39. approve exceptions for shared use of keys/secrets by multiple applications,
- 40. approve exceptions for destruction of keys/secrets by applications that did not import the key/secret,
- 41. configure the unlock banner using the text as specified in the administrative guidance when following the DoD Annex,
- 42. [enable/disable Location services] <sup>11</sup> 1.

# 5.1.5.4 Extended: Specification of Remediation Actions (FMT\_SMF\_EXT.1)

**FMT\_SMF\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall offer [alert the administrator, remove Enterprise applications,] upon unenrollment and [no other triggers].

# **5.1.6** Protection of the TSF (FPT)

# 5.1.6.1 Extended: Anti-Exploitation Services for Address Space Layout Randomization (FPT\_AEX\_EXT.1)

- **FPT\_AEX\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall provide [address space layout randomization (ASLR) to applications].
- **FPT\_AEX\_EXT.1.2** The base address of any user-space memory mapping will consist of at least 8 unpredictable bits.
- **FPT\_AEX\_EXT.1.3** The TSF shall provide [address space layout randomization (ASLR) to the kernel].
- **FPT\_AEX\_EXT.1.4** The base address of any kernel-space memory mapping will consist of at least 4 unpredictable bits.

#### 5.1.6.2 Extended: Anti-Exploitation Services for Memory Page Permissions (FPT\_AEX\_EXT.2)

- **FPT\_AEX\_EXT.2.1** The TSF shall be able to enforce read, write, and execute permissions on every page of physical memory.
- **FPT\_AEX\_EXT.2.2** The TSF shall be able to enforce a policy that write and execute permissions are not simultaneously granted on every page of physical memory.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 40 of 155

# 5.1.6.3 Extended: Anti-Exploitation Services for Stack Overflow Protection (FPT\_AEX\_EXT.3)

**FPT\_AEX\_EXT.3.1** TSF processes that execute in a non-privileged execution domain on the application processor shall implement stack-based buffer overflow protection.

#### 5.1.6.4 Extended: Domain Isolation (FPT\_AEX\_EXT.4)

**FPT AEX EXT.4.1** The TSF shall protect itself from modification by untrusted subjects.

**FPT\_AEX\_EXT.4.2** The TSF shall enforce isolation of address space between applications.

# 5.1.6.5 Extended: Plaintext Key Storage (FPT\_KST\_EXT.1)

**FPT\_KST\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall not store any plaintext key material in readable non-volatile memory.

# 5.1.6.6 Extended: No Key Transmission (FPT\_KST\_EXT.2)

**FPT\_KST\_EXT.2.1** The TSF shall not transmit any plaintext key material from the cryptographic module.

# 5.1.6.7 Extended: No Plaintext Key Transport (FPT\_KST\_EXT.3)

**FPT\_KST\_EXT.3.1** The TSF shall ensure it is not possible for the TOE user(s) to export plaintext keys.

# 5.1.6.8 Extended: Self-Test Event Notification (FPT\_NOT\_EXT.1)

**FPT\_NOT\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall transition to non-operational mode and [*log failures in the audit record, notify the administrator*] when the following types of failures occur:

- failures of the self-tests
- TSF software integrity verification failures
- [no other failures].

# 5.1.6.9 Reliable Time Stamps (FPT\_STM.1)

**FPT\_STM.1.1** The TSF shall be able to provide reliable time stamps for its own use.

#### 5.1.6.10 Extended: TSF Cryptographic Functionality Testing (FPT\_TST\_EXT.1)

**FPT\_TST\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall run a suite of self-tests [during initial start-up (on power on)] to demonstrate the correct operation of [all cryptographic functionality].

# 5.1.6.11 Extended: TSF Integrity Testing (FPT\_TST\_EXT.2)

The TSF shall verify the integrity of the Application Processor bootloader software, Application Processor OS kernel, and [operating system executable code and application executable code], stored in mutable media prior to its execution through the use of [digital signature using a hardware-protected asymmetric key].

# 5.1.6.12 Extended: Trusted Update: TSF Version Query (FPT\_TUD\_EXT.1)

**FPT\_TUD\_EXT.1.1** The TSF shall provide authorized users the ability to [query the current version of the TOE firmware/software].

**FPT\_TUD\_EXT.1.2** The TSF shall provide authorized users the ability to [query the current version of the hardware model of the device].

**FPT\_TUD\_EXT.1.3** The TSF shall provide authorized users the ability to [query the current version of installed mobile applications].

Microsoft © 2015 Page 41 of 155

# 5.1.6.13 Extended: Trusted Update Verification (FPT\_TUD\_EXT.2)

| FPT_TUD_EXT.2.1 | The TSF shall verify [software updates to the TSF] using [a digital signature by  |
|-----------------|---|
|                 | the manufacturer] prior to installing those updates.                              |
| FPT_TUD_EXT.2.2 | The boot integrity [key] shall only be updated by [verified software].            |
| FPT_TUD_EXT.2.3 | The digital signature verification key shall [be validated to a public key in the |
|                 | Trust Anchor Database, match a hardware-protected public key].                    |
| FPT_TUD_EXT.2.4 | The TSF shall verify [mobile application software] using [a digital signature     |
|                 | mechanism] prior to installation.   |
| FPT TUD EXT.2.5 | The TSF shall by default only accept mobile applications cryptographically        |

The TSF shall by default only accept mobile applications cryptographically verified by [a built-in X.509v3 certificate]. $^{12}$ 

FPT\_TUD\_EXT.2.6 The TSF shall verify that software updates to the TSF are a current or later version than the current version of the TSF.

# 5.1.7 TOE Access (FTA)

# 5.1.7.1 Extended: TSF- and User-initiated Locked State (FTA\_SSL\_EXT.1)

FTA\_SSL\_EXT.1.1 The TSF shall transition to a locked state after a time interval of inactivity and a user initiated lock, and upon transitioning to the locked state, the TSF shall perform the following operations:

- a) clearing or overwriting display devices, obscuring the previous contents;
- b) [Disabling any activity of the user's data access / TSF controlled display devices other than unlocking the session and displaying application status].

# 5.1.7.2 Extended: Wireless Network Access (FTA\_WSE\_EXT.1)

FTA WSE EXT.1.1 The TSF shall be able to attempt connections to wireless networks specified as acceptable networks as configured by the administrator in FMT\_SMF.1.

# 5.1.7.3 Default TOE Access Banners (FTA\_TAB.1)

FTA TAB.1.1 Before establishing a user session, the TSF shall display an Administratorspecified advisory notice and consent warning message regarding use of the TOE.

# **5.1.8 Trusted Path/Channels (FTP)**

# 5 1 8 1 Evtended: Trusted Channel Communication (ETP ITC EYT 1)

| 5.1.8.1 Extend  | iea: Trustea Channei Communication (FTP_ITC_EXT.1)                              |
|-----------------|---|
| FTP_ITC_EXT.1.1 | The TSF shall use 802.11-2012, 802.1X, and EAP-TLS and [IPsec, TLS, HTTPS       |
|                 | protocol to provide a communication channel between itself and another          |
|                 | trusted IT product that is logically distinct from other communication channels |
|                 | and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the     |
|                 | channel data from disclosure and detection of modification of the channel       |
|                 | data.   |
| FTP_ITC_EXT.1.2 | The TSF shall permit the TSF and applications to initiate communication via the |
|                 | two standards and a   |

trusted channel.

FTP ITC EXT.1.3 The TSF shall initiate communication via the trusted channel for connection to

Microsoft © 2015 Page 42 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>12</sup> All Windows Store Applications must signed by a Microsoft-approved certificate.

a wireless access point and [remote management operations].

# **5.2 TOE Security Assurance Requirements**

The security assurance requirements for the TOE are the requirements defined in the MDF PP Assurance Package as specified in Part 3 of the Common Criteria. No operations are applied to the assurance components.

In addition, the assurance activities from the Protection Profile for Mobile Device Fundamentals are used to determine that Windows satisfies the mobile device security functional requirements. These assurance activities are described in section 5.2.2.

# **5.2.1** CC Part 3 Assurance Requirements

The following table is the collection of CC Part 3 assurance requirements from the Protection Profile for Mobile Device Fundamentals.

| Requirement Class             | Requirement Component                     |
|-------------------------------|---|
| ASE: Security Target          | ASE_INT.1: ST introduction                |
|                               | ASE_CCL.1: Conformance claims             |
|                               | ASE_OBJ.1 Security objectives             |
|                               | ASE_ECD.1 Extended components definition  |
|                               | ASE_REQ.1 Stated security requirements    |
|                               | ASE_TSS.1 TOE summary specification       |
| ADV: Design                   | ADV_FSP.1: Basic functional specification |
| AGD: Guidance Documents       | AGD_OPE.1: Operational user guidance      |
|                               | AGD_PRE.1: Preparative procedures         |
| ALC: Life-cycle Support       | ALC_CMC.1: Labeling of the TOE            |
|                               | ALC_CMS.1: TOE CM Coverage                |
|                               | ALC_FLR.3: Systematic flaw remediation    |
|                               | ALC_TSU_EXT.1: Timely Security Updates    |
| ATE: Testing                  | ATE_IND.1: Independent testing - sample   |
| AVA: Vulnerability Assessment | AVA_VAN.1: Vulnerability survey           |

**Table 5-2 TOE Security Assurance Requirements** 

# 5.2.1.1 Timely Security Updates (ALC\_TSU\_EXT.1)

# **Developer action elements:**

**ALC\_TSU\_EXT.1.1D** The developer shall provide a description in the TSS of how timely security updates are made to the TOE.

# **Content and presentation elements:**

**ALC\_TSU\_EXT.1.1C** The description shall include the process for creating and deploying security updates for the TOE software/firmware.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 43 of 155

**Application Note:** The software to be described includes the operating systems of the application processor and the baseband processor, as well as any firmware and applications. The process description includes the TOE developer processes as well as any third-party (carrier) processes. The process description includes each deployment mechanism (e.g., over- the-air updates, per-carrier updates, downloaded updates).

**ALC\_TSU\_EXT.1.2C** The description shall express the time window as the length of time, in days, between public disclosure of a vulnerability and the public availability of security updates to the TOE.

**Application Note:** The total length of time may be presented as a summation of the periods of time that each party (e.g., TOE developer, mobile carrier) on the critical path consumes. The time period until public availability per deployment mechanism may differ; each is described.

**ALC\_TSU\_EXT.1.3C** The description shall include the mechanisms publicly available for reporting security issues pertaining to the TOE.

**Application Note:** The reporting mechanism could include web sites, email addresses, as well as a means to protect the sensitive nature of the report (e.g., public keys that could be used to encrypt the details of a proof-of-concept exploit).

### 5.2.2 Mobile Device Fundamentals PP Assurance Activities

This section copies the assurance activities from the protection profile in order to ease reading and comparisons between the protection profile and the security target.

# 5.2.2.1 Security Audit

#### 5.2.2.1.1 Audit Data Generation (FAU\_GEN.1)

The evaluator shall check the administrative guide and ensure that it lists all of the auditable events and provides a format for audit records. Each audit record format type must be covered, along with a brief description of each field. The evaluator shall check to make sure that every audit event type mandated by the PP is described and that the description of the fields contains the information required in FAU\_GEN.1.2.

The evaluator shall also make a determination of the administrative actions that are relevant in the context of this PP including those listed in the Management section. The evaluator shall examine the administrative guide and make a determination of which administrative commands are related to the configuration (including enabling or disabling) of the mechanisms implemented in the TOE that are necessary to enforce the requirements specified in the PP. The evaluator shall document the methodology or approach taken while determining which actions in the administrative guide are security relevant with respect to this PP. The evaluator may perform this activity as part of the activities associated with ensuring the AGD\_OPE guidance satisfies the requirements.

The evaluator shall test the TOE's ability to correctly generate audit records by having the TOE generate audit records for the events listed in the provided table and administrative actions. This should include all instances of an event. The evaluator shall test that audit records are generated for the establishment

Microsoft © 2015 Page 44 of 155

and termination of a channel for each of the cryptographic protocols contained in the ST. For administrative actions, the evaluator shall test that each action determined by the evaluator above to be security relevant in the context of this PP is auditable. When verifying the test results, the evaluator shall ensure the audit records generated during testing match the format specified in the administrative guide, and that the fields in each audit record have the proper entries.

Note that the testing here can be accomplished in conjunction with the testing of the security mechanisms directly. For example, testing performed to ensure that the administrative guidance provided is correct verifies that AGD\_OPE.1 is satisfied and should address the invocation of the administrative actions that are needed to verify the audit records are generated as expected.

# 5.2.2.1.2 Security Audit Event Selection (FAU\_SEL.1)

The evaluator shall review the administrative guidance to ensure that the guidance itemizes all event types, as well as describes all attributes that are to be selectable in accordance with the requirement, to include those attributes listed in the assignment. The administrative guidance shall also contain instructions on how to set the pre-selection as well as explain the syntax (if present) for multi-value pre-selection. The administrative guidance shall also identify those audit records that are always recorded, regardless of the selection criteria currently being enforced.

The evaluator shall also perform the following tests:

Test 1: For each attribute listed in the requirement, the evaluator shall devise a test to show that selecting the attribute causes only audit events with that attribute (or those that are always recorded, as identified in the administrative guidance) to be recorded.

Test 2: [conditional] If the TSF supports specification of more complex audit pre-selection criteria (e.g., multiple attributes, logical expressions using attributes) then the evaluator shall devise tests showing that this capability is correctly implemented. The evaluator shall also, in the test plan, provide a short narrative justifying the set of tests as representative and sufficient to exercise the capability.

# 5.2.2.1.3 Extended: Audit Storage Protection (FAU\_STG\_EXT.1)

*Test*: The evaluator shall attempt to access the audit trail as an unauthorized user and shall verify that the attempt fails.

# 5.2.2.2 Cryptographic Support

# 5.2.2.2.1 Cryptographic Key Generation for Key Establishment (FCS\_CKM.1(ASYM KA))

This assurance activity will verify the key generation and key establishments schemes used on the TOE.

**Key Generation**: The evaluator shall verify the implementation of the key generation routines of the supported schemes using the applicable tests below.

# Key Generation for RSA-Based Key Establishment Schemes

The evaluator shall verify the implementation of RSA Key Generation by the TOE using the Key Generation test. This test verifies the ability of the TSF to correctly produce values for the key

Microsoft © 2015 Page 45 of 155

components including the public verification exponent e, the private prime factors p and q, the public modulus n and the calculation of the private signature exponent d.

Key Pair generation specifies 5 ways (or methods) to generate the primes p and q. These include:

- 1. Random Primes:
  - Provable primes
  - Probable primes
- 2. Primes with Conditions:
  - Primes p1, p2, q1,q2, p and q shall all be provable primes
  - Primes p1, p2, q1, and q2 shall be provable primes and p and q shall be probable primes
  - Primes p1, p2, q1,q2, p and q shall all be probable primes

To test the key generation method for the Random Provable primes method and for all the Primes with Conditions methods, the evaluator must seed the TSF key generation routine with sufficient data to deterministically generate the RSA key pair. This includes the random seed(s), the public exponent of the RSA key, and the desired key length. For each key length supported, the evaluator shall have the TSF generate 25 key pairs. The evaluator shall verify the correctness of the TSF's implementation by comparing values generated by the TSF with those generated from a known good implementation.

# Key Generation for Finite-Field Cryptography (FFC) – Based 56A Schemes

#### FFC Domain Parameter and Key Generation Tests

The evaluator shall verify the implementation of the Parameters Generation and the Key Generation for FFC by the TOE using the Parameter Generation and Key Generation test. This test verifies the ability of the TSF to correctly produce values for the field prime p, the cryptographic prime q (dividing p-1), the cryptographic group generator g, and the calculation of the private key x and public key y.

The Parameter generation specifies 2 ways (or methods) to generate the cryptographic prime q and the field prime p:

Cryptographic and Field Primes:

- Primes q and p shall both be provable primes
- Primes q and field prime p shall both be probable primes

and two ways to generate the cryptographic group generator g:

Cryptographic Group Generator:

- Generator g constructed through a verifiable process
- Generator g constructed through an unverifiable process.

The key generation specifies 2 ways to generate the private key x:

Microsoft © 2015 Page 46 of 155

#### Private Key:

- len(q) bit output of RBG where 1 <= x <= q-1</li>
- len(q) + 64 bit output of RBG, followed by a mod q-1 operation where 1<= x<=q-1.

The security strength of the RBG must be at least that of the security offered by the FFC parameter set.

To test the cryptographic and field prime generation method for the provable primes method and/or the group generator g for a verifiable process, the evaluator must seed the TSF parameter generation routine with sufficient data to deterministically generate the parameter set.

For each key length supported, the evaluator shall have the TSF generate 25 parameter sets and key pairs. The evaluator shall verify the correctness of the TSF's implementation by comparing values generated by the TSF with those generated from a known good implementation. Verification must also confirm

- g!= 0,1
- q divides p-1
- g^q mod p = 1
- g^x mod p = y

for each FFC parameter set and key pair.

#### Key Generation for Elliptic Curve Cryptography (ECC) - Based 56A Schemes

#### **ECC Key Generation Test**

For each supported NIST curve, i.e., P-256, P-284 and P-521, the evaluator shall require the implementation under test (IUT) to generate 10 private/public key pairs. The private key shall be generated using an approved random bit generator (RBG). To determine correctness, the evaluator shall submit the generated key pairs to the public key verification (PKV) function of a known good implementation.

#### ECC Public Key Verification (PKV) Test

For each supported NIST curve, i.e., P-256, P-284 and P-521, the evaluator shall generate 10 private/public key pairs using the key generation function of a known good implementation and modify five of the public key values so that they are incorrect, leaving five values unchanged (i.e., correct). The evaluator shall obtain in response a set of 10 PASS/FAIL values.

# **Key Establishment Schemes**

The evaluator shall verify the implementation of the key establishment schemes of the supported by the TOE using the applicable tests below.

# SP800-56A Key Establishment Schemes

Microsoft © 2015 Page 47 of 155

The evaluator shall verify a TOE's implementation of SP800-56A key agreement schemes using the following Function and Validity tests. These validation tests for each key agreement scheme verify that a TOE has implemented the components of the key agreement scheme according to the specifications in the Recommendation. These components include the calculation of the DLC primitives (the shared secret value Z) and the calculation of the derived keying material (DKM) via the Key Derivation Function (KDF). If key confirmation is supported, the evaluator shall also verify that the components of key confirmation have been implemented correctly, using the test procedures described below. This includes the parsing of the DKM, the generation of MACdata and the calculation of MACtag.

#### **Function Test**

The Function test verifies the ability of the TOE to implement the key agreement schemes correctly. To conduct this test the evaluator shall generate or obtain test vectors from a known good implementation of the TOE supported schemes. For each supported key agreement scheme-key agreement role combination, KDF type, and, if supported, key confirmation role- key confirmation type combination, the tester shall generate 10 sets of test vectors. The data set consists of one set of domain parameter values (FFC) or the NIST approved curve (ECC) per 10 sets of public keys. These keys are static, ephemeral or both depending on the scheme being tested.

The evaluator shall obtain the DKM, the corresponding TOE's public keys (static and/or ephemeral), the MAC tag(s), and any inputs used in the KDF, such as the Other Information field OI and TOE id fields.

If the TOE does not use a KDF defined in SP 800-56A, the evaluator shall obtain only the public keys and the hashed value of the shared secret.

The evaluator shall verify the correctness of the TSF's implementation of a given scheme by using a known good implementation to calculate the shared secret value, derive the keying material DKM, and compare hashes or MAC tags generated from these values.

If key confirmation is supported, the TSF shall perform the above for each implemented approved MAC algorithm.

#### Validity Test

The Validity test verifies the ability of the TOE to recognize another party's valid and invalid key agreement results with or without key confirmation. To conduct this test, the evaluator shall obtain a list of the supporting cryptographic functions included in the SP800-56A key agreement implementation to determine which errors the TOE should be able to recognize. The evaluator generates a set of 24 (FFC) or 30 (ECC) test vectors consisting of data sets including domain parameter values or NIST approved curves, the evaluator's public keys, the TOE's public/private key pairs, MACTag, and any inputs used in the KDF, such as the other info and TOE id fields.

The evaluator shall inject an error in some of the test vectors to test that the TOE recognizes invalid key agreement results caused by the following fields being incorrect: the shared secret value Z, the DKM, the other information field OI, the data to be MACed, or the generated MACTag. If the TOE contains the

Microsoft © 2015 Page 48 of 155

full or partial (only ECC) public key validation, the evaluator will also individually inject errors in both parties' static public keys, both parties' ephemeral public keys and the TOE's static private key to assure the TOE detects errors in the public key validation function and/or the partial key validation function (in ECC only). At least two of the test vectors shall remain unmodified and therefore should result in valid key agreement results (they should pass).

The TOE shall use these modified test vectors to emulate the key agreement scheme using the corresponding parameters. The evaluator shall compare the TOE's results with the results using a known good implementation verifying that the TOE detects these errors.

#### SP800-56B Key Establishment Schemes

At this time, detailed test procedures for RSA-based key establishment schemes are not available. In order to show that the TSF complies with 800-56A and/or 800-56B, depending on the selections made, the evaluator shall ensure that the TSS contains the following information:

- The TSS shall list all sections of the appropriate 800-56 standard(s) to which the TOE complies.
- For each applicable section listed in the TSS, for all statements that are not "shall" (that is, "shall not", "should", and "should not"), if the TOE implements such options it shall be described in the TSS. If the included functionality is indicated as "shall not" or "should not" in the standard, the TSS shall provide a rationale for why this will not adversely affect the security policy implemented by the TOE.
- For each applicable section of 800-56A and 800-56B (as selected), any omission of functionality related to "shall" or "should" statements shall be described.

# 5.2.2.2.2 Cryptographic Key Generation for Authentication (FCS\_CKM.1(ASYM AU)) If the TSF implements a FIPS 186-4 signature scheme, this requirement is verified under FCS\_COP.1.1(3).

If the ESF implements the ANSI X9.31-1998 scheme, the evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes how the key-pairs are generated. In order to show that the TSF implementation complies with ANSI X9.31-1998, the evaluator shall ensure that the TSS contains the following information:

- The TSS shall list all sections of the standard to which the TOE complies;
- For each applicable section listed in the TSS, for all statements that are not "shall" (that is, "shall not", "should", and "should not"), if the TOE implements such options it shall be described in the TSS. If the included functionality is indicated as "shall not" or "should not" in the standard, the TSS shall provide a rationale for why this will not adversely affect the security policy implemented by the TOE;
- For each applicable section of Appendix B, any omission of functionality related to "shall" or "should" statements shall be described.

# 5.2.2.2.3 Cryptographic Key Generation for WLAN (FCS\_CKM.1(WLAN))

The cryptographic primitives will be verified through assurance activities specified later in this PP. The evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes how the primitives defined and implemented by this PP are

Microsoft © 2015 Page 49 of 155

used by the TOE in establishing and maintaining secure connectivity to the wireless clients. The TSS shall also provide a description of the developer's method(s) of assuring that their implementation conforms to the cryptographic standards; this includes not only testing done by the developing organization, but also any third-party testing that is performed (e.g. WPA2 certification). The evaluator shall ensure that the description of the testing methodology is of sufficient detail to determine the extent to which the details of the protocol specifics are tested.

# 5.2.2.2.4 Cryptographic Key Distribution for WLAN (FCS\_CKM.2)

The evaluator shall check the TSS to ensure that it describes how the GTK is unwrapped prior to being installed for use on the TOE using the AES implementation specified in this PP. The evaluator shall also perform the following tests:

Test 1: The evaluator shall successfully connect the TOE to the access point. As the TOE is connected, the evaluator shall observe that the GTK is not transmitted in the clear between the TOE and the Access Point.

Test 2: The evaluator shall cause a broadcast message to be sent by the Access Point to which the TOE is connected. The evaluator shall ensure the message is encrypted and cannot be read in transit, and that the TOE is able to decrypt and read the message sent.

#### 5.2.2.2.5 Extended: Cryptographic Key Support for Root Encryption Key (FCS CKM EXT.1)

The evaluator shall review the TSS to determine that a REK is supported by the product, that the TSS includes a description of the protection provided by the product for a REK, and that the TSS includes a description of the method of generation of a REK.

The evaluator shall verify that the description of the protection of a REK describes how any reading, import, and export of that REK is prevented. (For example, if the hardware protecting the REK is removable, the description should include how other devices are prevented from reading the REK.) The evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes how encryption/decryption/derivation actions are isolated so as to prevent applications and system-level processes from reading the REK while allowing encryption/decryption/derivation by the key.

If "hardware-isolated" is selected and REK(s) are isolated from the rich OS by a separate processor execution environment, the evaluator shall verify that the description includes how the rich OS is prevented from accessing the memory containing REK key material, which software is allowed access to the REK, how any other software in the execution environment is prevented from reading that key material, and what other mechanisms prevent the REK key material from being written to shared memory locations between the rich OS and the separate execution environment.

If key derivation is performed using a REK, the evaluator shall ensure that the TSS description includes a description of the key derivation function and shall verify the key derivation uses an approved derivation mode and key expansion algorithm according to SP 800-108. (Additional key expansion algorithms are defined in other NIST Special Publications.)

Microsoft © 2015 Page 50 of 155

The evaluator shall verify that the generation of a REK meets the FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1.1 and FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1.2 requirements:

- If REK(s) is/are generated on-device, the TSS shall include a description of the generation
  mechanism including what triggers a generation, how the functionality described by
  FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1 is invoked, and whether a separate instance of the RBG is used for REK(s).
- If REK(s) is/are generated off-device, the TSS shall include evidence that the RBG meets FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1. This will likely necessitate a second set of RBG documentation equivalent to the documentation provided for the RBG assurance activities. In addition, the TSS shall describe the manufacturing process that prevents the device manufacturer from accessing any REKs.

# 5.2.2.2.6 Extended: Cryptographic Key Random Generation for Data Encryption Keys (FCS\_CKM\_EXT.2)

The evaluator shall review the TSS to determine that it describes how the functionality described by FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1 is invoked to generate DEKs. The evaluator uses the description of the RBG functionality in FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1 or documentation available for the operational environment to determine that the key size being requested is identical to the key size and mode to be used for the encryption/decryption of the data.

# 5.2.2.2.7 Extended: Cryptographic Key Generation for Key Encryption Keys (FCS\_CKM\_EXT.3) The evaluator shall examine the password hierarchy TSS to ensure that the formation of all KEKs is described and that the key sizes match that described by the ST author.

- The evaluator shall review the TSS to verify that it contains a description of the PBKDF use to derive KEKs. This description must include the size and storage location of salts. This activity may be performed in combination with that for FCS\_COP.1(5).
- If the KEK is generated by an RBG, the evaluator shall review the TSS to determine that it describes how the functionality described by FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1 is invoked. The evaluator uses the description of the RBG functionality in FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1 or documentation available for the operational environment to determine that the key size being requested is greater than or equal to the key size and mode to be used for the encryption/decryption of the data.
- If the KEK is generated according to an asymmetric key scheme, the evaluator shall review the TSS to determine that it describes how the functionality described by FCS\_CKM.1(1) is invoked. The evaluator uses the description of the key generation functionality in FCS\_CKM.1(1) or documentation available for the operational environment to determine that the key strength being requested is greater than or equal to 112 bits.
- If the KEK is formed from a combination, the evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes the method of combination and that this method is either an XOR, a KDF, or encryption. If a KDF is used, the evaluator shall ensure that the TSS description includes a description of the key derivation function and shall verify the key derivation uses an approved derivation mode and key expansion algorithm according to SP 800-108. (Additional key expansion algorithms are defined in other NIST Special Publications.)

Microsoft © 2015 Page 51 of 155

# 5.2.2.2.8 Extended: Cryptographic Key Destruction (FCS\_CKM\_EXT.4)

The evaluator shall check to ensure the TSS describes when each of the plaintext keys (DEKs, software-based key storage, and KEKs) are cleared including on system power off, on wipe function, on disconnection of trusted channels, when no longer needed by the trusted channel per the protocol, when transitioning to the locked state (and possibly including immediately after use, while in the locked state, etc.); and the type of clearing procedure that is performed (cryptographic erase, overwrite with zeros, overwrite three or more times by a different alternating pattern, overwrite with random pattern, or block erase). If different types of memory are used to store the materials to be protected, the evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes the clearing procedure in terms of the memory in which the data are stored (for example, "secret keys stored on flash are cleared by overwriting once with zeros, while secret keys stored on the internal persistent storage device are cleared by overwriting three times with a random pattern that is changed before each write").

Assurance Activity Note: The following tests require the developer to provide access to a test platform that provides the evaluator with tools that are typically not found on consumer Mobile Device products.

For each key clearing situation, including on system power off, on wipe function, on disconnection of trusted channels, when no longer needed by the trusted channel per the protocol, and when transitioning to the locked state (and possibly including immediately after use, while in the locked state, etc.) the evaluator shall repeat the following test.

Test 1: The evaluator shall utilize appropriate combinations of specialized operational environment and development tools (debuggers, simulators, etc.) for the TOE and instrumented TOE builds to test that keys are cleared correctly, including all intermediate copies of the key that may have been created internally by the TOE during normal cryptographic processing with that key.

Cryptographic TOE implementations in software shall be loaded and exercised under a debugger to perform such tests. The evaluator shall perform the following test for each key subject to clearing, including intermediate copies of keys that are persisted encrypted by the TOE:

- 1. Load the instrumented TOE build in a debugger.
- 2. Record the value of the key in the TOE subject to clearing.
- 3. Cause the TOE to perform a normal cryptographic processing with the key from #1.
- 4. Cause the TOE to clear the key.
- 5. Cause the TOE to stop the execution but not exit.
- 6. Cause the TOE to dump the entire memory footprint of the TOE into a binary file.
- 7. Search the content of the binary file created in #4 for instances of the known key value from #1.

The test succeeds if no copies of the key from #1 are found in step #7 above and fails otherwise.

The evaluator shall perform this test on all keys, including those persisted in encrypted form, to ensure intermediate copies are cleared.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 52 of 155

Test 2: In cases where the TOE is implemented in firmware and operates in a limited operating environment that does not allow the use of debuggers, the evaluator shall utilize a simulator for the TOE on a general purpose operating system. The evaluator shall provide a rationale explaining the instrumentation of the simulated test environment and justifying the obtained test results.

#### 5.2.2.2.9 Extended: TSF Wipe (FCS\_CKM\_EXT.5)

The evaluator shall check to ensure the TSS describes how the device is wiped; and the type of clearing procedure that is performed (cryptographic erase or overwrite) and, if overwrite is performed, the overwrite procedure (overwrite with zeros, overwrite three or more times by a different alternating pattern, overwrite with random pattern, or block erase). If different types of memory are used to store the data to be protected, the evaluator shall check to ensure that the TSS describes the clearing procedure in terms of the memory in which the data are stored (for example, "data stored on flash are cleared by overwriting once with zeros, while data stored on the internal persistent storage device are cleared by overwriting three times with a random pattern that is changed before each write").

Assurance Activity Note: The following tests require the developer to provide access to a test platform that provides the evaluator with tools that are typically not found on consumer Mobile Device products.

The assurance activities differ for the two wipe methods:

Test for Method 1: The evaluator shall enable encryption according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall use the test outlined for FCS\_CKM\_EXT.4, implementing the wipe command according to the AGD guidance provided for FMT\_SMF.1 and as defined in Test 1, Step 4 of the assurance activities specified following FCS\_CKM\_EXT.4.

Test for Method 2: The evaluator shall enable encryption according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall create user data (protected data), for example, by using an application. The evaluator shall use a tool provided by the developer to examine this data stored in memory. The evaluator shall initiate the wipe command according to the AGD guidance provided for FMT\_SMF.1. The evaluator shall use a tool provided by the developer to examine the same data location in memory to verify that the data has been wiped according to the method described in the TSS. This test shall be repeated for each type of memory used to store the data to be protected.

# 5.2.2.2.10 Extended: Cryptographic Salt Generation (FCS\_CKM\_EXT.6)

The ST author shall provide a description in the TSS regarding the salt generation. The evaluator shall confirm that the salt is generating using an RBG described in FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1.

# 5.2.2.2.11 Cryptographic Operation for Data Encryption/Decryption (FCS\_COP.1(SYM))

#### **AES-CBC Tests**

#### **AES-CBC Known Answer Tests**

There are four Known Answer Tests (KATs), described below. In all KATs, the plaintext, ciphertext, and IV values shall be 128-bit blocks. The results from each test may either be obtained by the evaluator directly or by supplying the inputs to the implementer and receiving the results in response. To

Microsoft © 2015 Page 53 of 155

determine correctness, the evaluator shall compare the resulting values to those obtained by submitting the same inputs to a known good implementation.

**KAT-1**. To test the encrypt functionality of AES-CBC, the evaluator shall supply a set of 10 plaintext values and obtain the ciphertext value that results from AES-CBC encryption of the given plaintext using a key value of all zeros and an IV of all zeros. Five plaintext values shall be encrypted with a 128-bit all-zeros key, and the other five shall be encrypted with a 256-bit all-zeros key.

To test the decrypt functionality of AES-CBC, the evaluator shall perform the same test as for encrypt, using 10 ciphertext values as input and AES-CBC decryption.

**KAT-2**. To test the encrypt functionality of AES-CBC, the evaluator shall supply a set of 10 key values and obtain the ciphertext value that results from AES-CBC encryption of an all-zeros plaintext using the given key value and an IV of all zeros. Five of the keys shall be 128-bit keys, and the other five shall be 256-bit keys.

To test the decrypt functionality of AES-CBC, the evaluator shall perform the same test as for encrypt, using an all-zero ciphertext value as input and AES-CBC decryption.

**KAT-3**. To test the encrypt functionality of AES-CBC, the evaluator shall supply the two sets of key values described below and obtain the ciphertext value that results from AES encryption of an all-zeros plaintext using the given key value and an IV of all zeros. The first set of keys shall have 128 128-bit keys, and the second set shall have 256 256-bit keys. Key i in each set shall have the leftmost i bits be ones and the rightmost N-i bits be zeros, for i in [1,N].

To test the decrypt functionality of AES-CBC, the evaluator shall supply the two sets of key and ciphertext value pairs described below and obtain the plaintext value that results from AES-CBC decryption of the given ciphertext using the given key and an IV of all zeros. The first set of key/ciphertext pairs shall have 128 128-bit key/ciphertext pairs, and the second set of key/ciphertext pairs shall have 256 256-bit key/ciphertext pairs. Key i in each set shall have the leftmost i bits be ones and the rightmost N-i bits be zeros, for i in [1,N]. The ciphertext value in each pair shall be the value that results in an all-zeros plaintext when decrypted with its corresponding key.

**KAT-4**. To test the encrypt functionality of AES-CBC, the evaluator shall supply the set of 128 plaintext values described below and obtain the two ciphertext values that result from AES-CBC encryption of the given plaintext using a 128-bit key value of all zeros with an IV of all zeros and using a 256-bit key value of all zeros with an IV of all zeros, respectively. Plaintext value i in each set shall have the leftmost i bits be ones and the rightmost 128-i bits be zeros, for i in [1,128].

To test the decrypt functionality of AES-CBC, the evaluator shall perform the same test as for encrypt, using ciphertext values of the same form as the plaintext in the encrypt test as input and AES-CBC decryption.

#### **AES-CBC Multi-Block Message Test**

Microsoft © 2015 Page 54 of 155

The evaluator shall test the encrypt functionality by encrypting an i-block message where 1 < i < = 10. The evaluator shall choose a key, an IV and plaintext message of length i blocks and encrypt the message, using the mode to be tested, with the chosen key and IV. The ciphertext shall be compared to the result of encrypting the same plaintext message with the same key and IV using a known good implementation.

The evaluator shall also test the decrypt functionality for each mode by decrypting an i-block message where 1 < i <= 10. The evaluator shall choose a key, an IV and a ciphertext message of length i blocks and decrypt the message, using the mode to be tested, with the chosen key and IV. The plaintext shall be compared to the result of decrypting the same ciphertext message with the same key and IV using a known good implementation.

#### **AES-CBC Monte Carlo Tests**

The evaluator shall test the encrypt functionality using a set of 200 plaintext, IV, and key 3- tuples. 100 of these shall use 128 bit keys, and 100 shall use 256 bit keys. The plaintext and IV values shall be 128-bit blocks. For each 3-tuple, 1000 iterations shall be run as follows:

```
# Input: PT, IV, Key

for i = 1 to 1000:

    if i == 1:

        CT[1] = AES-CBC-Encrypt(Key, IV, PT)

        PT = IV

    else:

        CT[i] = AES-CBC-Encrypt(Key, PT)

        PT = CT[i-1]
```

The ciphertext computed in the 1000th iteration (i.e., CT[1000]) is the result for that trial. This result shall be compared to the result of running 1000 iterations with the same values using a known good implementation.

The evaluator shall test the decrypt functionality using the same test as for encrypt, exchanging CT and PT and replacing AES-CBC-Encrypt with AES-CBC-Decrypt.

### **AES-CCM Tests**

The evaluator shall test the generation-encryption and decryption-verification functionality of AES-CCM for the following input parameter and tag lengths:

#### 128 bit and 256 bit keys

Microsoft © 2015 Page 55 of 155

**Two payload lengths**. One payload length shall be the shortest supported payload length, greater than or equal to zero bytes. The other payload length shall be the longest supported payload length, less than or equal to 32 bytes (256 bits).

**Two or three associated data lengths**. One associated data length shall be 0, if supported. One associated data length shall be the shortest supported payload length, greater than or equal to zero bytes. One associated data length shall be the longest supported payload length, less than or equal to 32 bytes (256 bits). If the implementation supports an associated data length of 2<sup>16</sup> bytes, an associated data length of 2<sup>16</sup> bytes shall be tested.

Nonce lengths. All supported nonce lengths between 7 and 13 bytes, inclusive, shall be tested.

Tag lengths. All supported tag lengths of 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14 and 16 bytes shall be tested.

To test the generation-encryption functionality of AES-CCM, the evaluator shall perform the following four tests:

**Test 1**. For EACH supported key and associated data length and ANY supported payload, nonce and tag length, the evaluator shall supply one key value, one nonce value and 10 pairs of associated data and payload values and obtain the resulting ciphertext.

**Test 2**. For EACH supported key and payload length and ANY supported associated data, nonce and tag length, the evaluator shall supply one key value, one nonce value and 10 pairs of associated data and payload values and obtain the resulting ciphertext.

**Test 3**. For EACH supported key and nonce length and ANY supported associated data, payload and tag length, the evaluator shall supply one key value and 10 associated data, payload and nonce value 3-tuples and obtain the resulting ciphertext.

**Test 4**. For EACH supported key and tag length and ANY supported associated data, payload and nonce length, the evaluator shall supply one key value, one nonce value and 10 pairs of associated data and payload values and obtain the resulting ciphertext.

To determine correctness in each of the above tests, the evaluator shall compare the ciphertext with the result of generation-encryption of the same inputs with a known good implementation.

To test the decryption-verification functionality of AES-CCM, for EACH combination of supported associated data length, payload length, nonce length and tag length, the evaluator shall supply a key value and 15 nonce, associated data and ciphertext 3-tuples and obtain either a FAIL result or a PASS result with the decrypted payload. The evaluator shall supply 10 tuples that should FAIL and 5 that should PASS per set of 15. Additionally, the evaluator shall use tests from the IEEE 802.11-02/362r6 document —Proposed Test vectors for IEEE 802.11 TGi , dated September 10, 2002, Section 2.1 AES-CCMP Encapsulation Example and Section 2.2 Additional AES CCMP Test Vectors to further verify the IEEE 802.11-2007 implementation of AES-CCMP.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 56 of 155

#### **AES-GCM Monte Carlo Test**

The evaluator shall test the authenticated encrypt functionality of AES-GCM for each combination of the following input parameter lengths:

# 128 bit and 256 bit keys

**Two plaintext lengths**. One of the plaintext lengths shall be a non-zero integer multiple of 128 bits, if supported. The other plaintext length shall not be an integer multiple of 128 bits, if supported.

**Three AAD lengths**. One AAD length shall be 0, if supported. One AAD length shall be a non-zero integer multiple of 128 bits, if supported. One AAD length shall not be an integer multiple of 128 bits, if supported.

Two IV lengths. If 96 bit IV is supported, 96 bits shall be one of the two IV lengths tested.

The evaluator shall test the encrypt functionality using a set of 10 key, plaintext, AAD, and IV tuples for each combination of parameter lengths above and obtain the ciphertext value and tag that results from AES-GCM authenticated encrypt. Each supported tag length shall be tested at least once per set of 10. The IV value may be supplied by the evaluator or the implementation being tested, as long as it is known.

The evaluator shall test the decrypt functionality using a set of 10 key, ciphertext, tag, AAD, and IV 5-tuples for each combination of parameter lengths above and obtain a Pass/Fail result on authentication and the decrypted plaintext if Pass. The set shall include five tuples that Pass and five that Fail.

The results from each test may either be obtained by the evaluator directly or by supplying the inputs to the implementer and receiving the results in response. To determine correctness, the evaluator shall compare the resulting values to those obtained by submitting the same inputs to a known good implementation.

#### **XTS-AES Monte Carlo Test**

The evaluator shall test the encrypt functionality of XTS-AES for each combination of the following input parameter lengths:

#### 256 bit (for AES-128) and 512 bit (for AES-256) keys

**Three data unit (i.e., plaintext) lengths**. One of the data unit lengths shall be a non-zero integer multiple of 128 bits, if supported. One of the data unit lengths shall be an integer multiple of 128 bits, if supported. The third data unit length shall be either the longest supported data unit length or 2<sup>16</sup> bits, whichever is smaller.

using a set of 100 (key, plaintext and 128-bit random tweak value) 3-tuples and obtain the ciphertext that results from XTS-AES encrypt.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 57 of 155

The evaluator may supply a data unit sequence number instead of the tweak value if the implementation supports it. The data unit sequence number is a base-10 number ranging between 0 and 255 that implementations convert to a tweak value internally.

The evaluator shall test the decrypt functionality of XTS-AES using the same test as for encrypt, replacing plaintext values with ciphertext values and XTS-AES encrypt with XTS- AES decrypt.

#### AES Key Wrap (AES-KW) and Key Wrap with Padding (AES-KWP)

Test The evaluator shall test the authenticated encryption functionality of AES-KW for EACH combination of the following input parameter lengths:

# 128 and 256 bit key encryption keys (KEKs)

Three plaintext lengths. One of the plaintext lengths shall be two semi-blocks (128 bits). One of the plaintext lengths shall be three semi-blocks (192 bits). The third data unit length shall be the longest supported plaintext length less than or equal to 64 semi-blocks (4096 bits).

using a set of 100 key and plaintext pairs and obtain the ciphertext that results from AES-KW authenticated encryption. To determine correctness, the evaluator shall use the AES-KW authenticated encryption function of a known good implementation.

The evaluator shall test the authenticated-decryption functionality of AES-KW using the same test as for authenticated-encryption, replacing plaintext values with ciphertext values and AES-KW authenticated-encryption with AES-KW authenticated-decryption.

The evaluator shall test the authenticated-encryption functionality of AES-KWP using the same test as for AES-KW authenticated-encryption with the following change in the three plaintext lengths:

One plaintext length shall be one octet. One plaintext length shall be 20 octets (160 bits).

One plaintext length shall be the longest supported plaintext length less than or equal to 512 octets (4096 bits).

The evaluator shall test the authenticated-decryption functionality of AES-KWP using the same test as for AES-KWP authenticated-encryption, replacing plaintext values with ciphertext values and AES-KWP authenticated-encryption with AES-KWP authenticated- decryption.

# 5.2.2.2.12 Cryptographic Operation for Hashing (FCS\_COP.1(HASH))

The evaluator checks the AGD documents to determine that any configuration that is required to be done to configure the functionality for the required hash sizes is present. The evaluator shall check that the association of the hash function with other TSF cryptographic functions (for example, the digital signature verification function) is documented in the TSS.

The TSF hashing functions can be implemented in one of two modes. The first mode is the byte-oriented mode. In this mode the TSF only hashes messages that are an integral number of bytes in length; i.e.,

Microsoft © 2015 Page 58 of 155

the length (in bits) of the message to be hashed is divisible by 8. The second mode is the bit-oriented mode. In this mode the TSF hashes messages of arbitrary length. As there are different tests for each mode, an indication is given in the following sections for the bit-oriented vs. the byte-oriented testmacs.

The evaluator shall perform all of the following tests for each hash algorithm implemented by the TSF and used to satisfy the requirements of this PP.

# Short Messages Test - Bit-oriented Mode

The evaluators devise an input set consisting of m+1 messages, where m is the block length of the hash algorithm. The length of the messages range sequentially from 0 to m bits. The message text shall be pseudorandomly generated. The evaluators compute the message digest for each of the messages and ensure that the correct result is produced when the messages are provided to the TSF.

# Short Messages Test - Byte-oriented Mode

The evaluators devise an input set consisting of m/8+1 messages, where m is the block length of the hash algorithm. The length of the messages range sequentially from 0 to m/8 bytes, with each message being an integral number of bytes. The message text shall be pseudorandomly generated. The evaluators compute the message digest for each of the messages and ensure that the correct result is produced when the messages are provided to the TSF.

# Selected Long Messages Test - Bit-oriented Mode

The evaluators devise an input set consisting of m messages, where m is the block length of the hash algorithm. The length of the ith message is 512 + 99\*i, where  $1 \le i \le m$ . The message text shall be pseudorandomly generated. The evaluators compute the message digest for each of the messages and ensure that the correct result is produced when the messages are provided to the TSF.

# Selected Long Messages Test - Byte-oriented Mode

The evaluators devise an input set consisting of m/8 messages, where m is the block length of the hash algorithm. The length of the ith message is 512 + 8\*99\*i, where  $1 \le i \le m/8$ . The message text shall be pseudorandomly generated. The evaluators compute the message digest for each of the messages and ensure that the correct result is produced when the messages are provided to the TSF.

# Pseudorandomly Generated Messages Test

This test is for byte-oriented implementations only. The evaluators randomly generate a seed that is n bits long, where n is the length of the message digest produced by the hash function to be tested. The evaluators then formulate a set of 100 messages and associated digests by following the algorithm provided in Figure 1 of [SHAVS]. The evaluators then ensure that the correct result is produced when the messages are provided to the TSF.

# 5.2.2.2.13 Cryptographic Operation for Signature Algorithms (FCS\_COP.1(SIGN))

#### **Key Generation:**

Microsoft © 2015 Page 59 of 155

# **Key Generation for RSA Signature Schemes**

The evaluator shall verify the implementation of RSA Key Generation by the TOE using the Key Generation test. This test verifies the ability of the TSF to correctly produce values for the key components including the public verification exponent e, the private prime factors p and q, the public modulus n and the calculation of the private signature exponent d.

Key Pair generation specifies 5 ways (or methods) to generate the primes p and q. These include:

- 1) Random Primes:
  - Provable primes
  - Probable primes
- 2) Primes with Conditions:
  - Primes p1, p2, q1,q2, p and q shall all be provable primes
  - Primes p1, p2, q1, and q2 shall be provable primes and p and q shall be probable primes
  - Primes p1, p2, q1,q2, p and q shall all be probable primes

To test the key generation method for the Random Provable primes method and for all the Primes with Conditions methods, the evaluator must seed the TSF key generation routine with sufficient data to deterministically generate the RSA key pair. This includes the random seed(s), the public exponent of the RSA key, and the desired key length. For each key length supported, the evaluator shall have the TSF generate 25 key pairs. The evaluator shall verify the correctness of the TSF's implementation by comparing values generated by the TSF with those generated from a known good implementation.

# **ECDSA Key Generation Tests**

# FIPS 186-4 ECDSA Key Generation Test

For each supported NIST curve, i.e., P-256, P-284 and P-521, the evaluator shall require the implementation under test (IUT) to generate 10 private/public key pairs. The private key shall be generated using an approved random bit generator (RBG). To determine correctness, the evaluator shall submit the generated key pairs to the public key verification (PKV) function of a known good implementation.

# FIPS 186-4 Public Key Verification (PKV) Test

For each supported NIST curve, i.e., P-256, P-284 and P-521, the evaluator shall generate 10 private/public key pairs using the key generation function of a known good implementation and modify five of the public key values so that they are incorrect, leaving five values unchanged (i.e., correct). The evaluator shall obtain in response a set of 10 PASS/FAIL values.

# **ECDSA Algorithm Tests**

#### **ECDSA FIPS 186-4 Signature Generation Test**

Microsoft © 2015 Page 60 of 155

For each supported NIST curve (i.e., P-256, P-284 and P-521) and SHA function pair, the evaluator shall generate 10 1024-bit long messages and obtain for each message a public key and the resulting signature values R and S. To determine correctness, the evaluator shall use the signature verification function of a known good implementation.

#### **ECDSA FIPS 186-4 Signature Verification Test**

For each supported NIST curve (i.e., P-256, P-284 and P-521) and SHA function pair, the evaluator shall generate a set of 10 1024-bit message, public key and signature tuples and modify one of the values (message, public key or signature) in five of the 10 tuples. The evaluator shall obtain in response a set of 10 PASS/FAIL values.

# **RSA Signature Algorithm Tests**

#### **Signature Generation Test**

The evaluator shall verify the implementation of RSA Signature Generation by the TOE using the Signature Generation Test. To conduct this test the evaluator must generate or obtain 10 messages from a trusted reference implementation for each modulus size/SHA combination supported by the TSF. The evaluator shall have the TOE use their private key and modulus value to sign these messages. The evaluator shall verify the correctness of the TSF's signature using a known good implementation and the associated public keys to verify the signatures.

# **Signature Verification Test**

The evaluator shall perform the Signature Verification test to verify the ability of the TOE to recognize another party's valid and invalid signatures. The evaluator shall inject errors into the test vectors produced during the Signature Verification Test by introducing errors in some of the public keys e, messages, IR format, and/or signatures. The TOE attempts to verify the signatures and returns success or failure.

The evaluator shall use these test vectors to emulate the signature verification test using the corresponding parameters and verify that the TOE detects these errors.

# 5.2.2.2.14 Cryptographic Operation for Keyed Hash Algorithms (FCS\_COP.1(HMAC))

The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that it specifies the following values used by the HMAC function: key length, hash function used, block size, and output MAC length used.

For each of the supported parameter sets, the evaluator shall compose 15 sets of test data. Each set shall consist of a key and message data. The evaluator shall have the TSF generate HMAC tags for these sets of test data. The resulting MAC tags shall be compared to the result of generating HMAC tags with the same key and IV using a known good implementation.

# 5.2.2.2.15 Cryptographic Operation for Password Based Key Derivation (FCS\_COP.1(PBKD))

The evaluator shall check that the TSS describes the method by which the password is first encoded and then fed to the SHA algorithm. The settings for the algorithm (padding, blocking, etc.) shall be described,

Microsoft © 2015 Page 61 of 155

and the evaluator shall verify that these are supported by the selections in this component as well as the selections concerning the hash function itself. The evaluator shall verify that the TSS contains a description of how the output of the hash function is used to form the submask that will be input into the function and is the same length as the DEK as specified in FCS CKM EXT.2.

For the NIST SP 800-132-based conditioning of the passphrase, the required assurance activities will be performed when doing the assurance activities for the appropriate requirements (FCS\_COP.1.1(4)). If any manipulation of the key is performed in forming the submask that will be used to form the KEK, that process shall be described in the TSS.

No explicit testing of the formation of the submask from the input password is required.

# 5.2.2.2.16 Extended: Initialization Vector Generation (FCS\_IV\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall examine the key hierarchy section of the TSS to ensure that the encryption of all keys is described and the formation of the IVs for each key encrypted by the same KEK meets FCS IV EXT.1.

# 5.2.2.2.17 Extended: Random Bit Generation (FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1)

Documentation shall be produced — and the evaluator shall perform the activities — in accordance with Annex E.

The evaluator shall verify that the API documentation provided according to Section 6.2.1 includes the security functions described in FCS RBG EXT.1.3.

The evaluator shall perform the following tests, depending on the standard to which the RBG conforms.

Implementations Conforming to FIP 140-2 Annex C

The reference for the tests contained in this section is The Random Number Generator Validation System (RNGVS). The evaluators shall conduct the following two tests. Note that the "expected values" are produced by a reference implementation of the algorithm that is known to be correct. Proof of correctness is left to each Scheme.

The evaluators shall perform a Variable Seed Test. The evaluators shall provide a set of 128 (Seed, DT) pairs to the TSF RBG function, each 128 bits. The evaluators shall also provide a key (of the length appropriate to the AES algorithm) that is constant for all 128 (Seed, DT) pairs. The DT value is incremented by 1 for each set. The seed values shall have no repeats within the set. The evaluators ensure that the values returned by the TSF match the expected values.

The evaluators shall perform a Monte Carlo Test. For this test, they supply an initial Seed and DT value to the TSF RBG function; each of these is 128 bits. The evaluators shall also provide a key (of the length appropriate to the AES algorithm) that is constant throughout the test. The evaluators then invoke the TSF RBG 10,000 times, with the DT value being incremented by 1 on each iteration, and the new seed for the subsequent iteration produced as specified in NIST-Recommended Random Number Generator Based on ANSI X9.31 Appendix A.2.4 Using the 3-Key Triple DES and AES Algorithms, Section 3. The evaluators ensure that the 10,000th value produced matches the expected value.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 62 of 155

Implementations Conforming to NIST Special Publication 800-90A

The evaluator shall perform 15 trials for the RNG implementation. If the RNG is configurable, the evaluator shall perform 15 trials for each configuration. The evaluator shall also confirm that the operational guidance contains appropriate instructions for configuring the RNG functionality.

If the RNG has prediction resistance enabled, each trial consists of (1) instantiate DRBG, (2) generate the first block of random bits (3) generate a second block of random bits (4) uninstantiate. The evaluator verifies that the second block of random bits is the expected value. The evaluator shall generate eight input values for each trial. The first is a count (0-14). The next three are entropy input, nonce, and personalization string for the instantiate operation. The next two are additional input and entropy input for the first call to generate. The final two are additional input and entropy input for the second call to generate. These values are randomly generated. —generate one block of random bits means to generate random bits with number of returned bits equal to the Output Block Length (as defined in NIST SP800-90A).

If the RNG does not have prediction resistance, each trial consists of (1) instantiate DRBG, (2) generate the first block of random bits (3) reseed, (4) generate a second block of random bits (5) uninstantiate. The evaluator verifies that the second block of random bits is the expected value. The evaluator shall generate eight input values for each trial. The first is a count (0 - 14). The next three are entropy input, nonce, and personalization string for the instantiate operation. The fifth value is additional input to the first call to generate. The sixth and seventh are additional input and entropy input to the call to reseed. The final value is additional input to the second generate call.

The following paragraphs contain more information on some of the input values to be generated/selected by the evaluator.

- Entropy input: the length of the entropy input value must equal the seed length.
- **Nonce**: If a nonce is supported (CTR\_DRBG with no Derivation Function does not use a nonce), the nonce bit length is one-half the seed length.
- **Personalization string**: The length of the personalization string must be <= seed length. If the implementation only supports one personalization string length, then the same length can be used for both values. If more than one string length is support, the evaluator shall use personalization strings of two different lengths. If the implementation does not use a personalization string, no value needs to be supplied.
- Additional input: the additional input bit lengths have the same defaults and restrictions as the personalization string lengths.

# 5.2.2.2.18 Extended: Cryptographic Algorithm Services (FCS\_SRV\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall verify that the API documentation provided according to Section 6.2.1 includes the security functions (cryptographic algorithms) described in these requirements.

The evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide access to, an application that requests cryptographic operations by the TSF. The evaluator shall verify that the results from the validation

Microsoft © 2015 Page 63 of 155

match the expected results according to the API documentation. This application may be used to assist in verifying the cryptographic operation assurance activities for the other algorithm services requirements.

#### 5.2.2.2.19 Extended: Cryptographic Key Storage (FCS\_STG\_EXT.1)

The assurance activity for this component entails examination of the ST's TSS to determine that the TOE's implements the required secure key storage.

The evaluator shall review the AGD guidance to determine that it describes the steps needed to import or destroy keys/secrets. The evaluator shall also verify that the API documentation provided according to Section 6.2.1 includes the security functions (import, use, and destruction) described in these requirements. The API documentation shall include the method by which applications restrict access to their keys/secrets in order to meet FCS\_STG\_EXT.1.4.

The evaluator shall test the functionality of each security function:

Test 1: The evaluator shall import keys/secrets of each supported type according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide access to, an application that generates a key/secret of each supported type and calls the import functions. The evaluator shall verify that no errors occur during import.

Test 2: The evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide access to, an application that uses an imported key/secret:

For RSA, the secret shall be used to sign data.

In the future additional types will be required to be tested:

- For ECDSA, the secret shall be used to sign data
- For symmetric algorithms, the secret shall be used to encrypt data.
- For persistent secrets, the secret shall be compared to the imported secret.

The evaluator shall repeat this test with the application-imported keys/secrets and a different application's imported keys/secrets. The evaluator shall verify that the TOE requires approval before allowing the application to use the key/secret imported by the user or by a different application:

- The evaluator shall deny the approvals to verify that the application is not able to use the key/secret as described.
- The evaluator shall repeat the test, allowing the approvals to verify that the application is able to use the key/secret as described.

If the ST Author has selected "common application developer", this test is performed by either using applications from different developers or appropriately (according to API documentation) not authorizing sharing.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 64 of 155

Test 3: The evaluator shall destroy keys/secrets of each supported type according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide access to, an application that destroys an imported key/secret.

The evaluator shall repeat this test with the application-imported keys/secrets and a different application's imported keys/secrets. The evaluator shall verify that the TOE requires approval before allowing the application to destroy the key/secret imported by the administrator or by a different application:

- The evaluator shall deny the approvals and verify that the application is still able to use the key/secret as described.
- The evaluator shall repeat the test, allowing the approvals and verifying that the application is no longer able to use the key/secret as described.

If the ST Author has selected "common application developer", this test is performed by either using applications from different developers or appropriately (according to API documentation) not authorizing sharing.

Assurance Activity Note: The following tests require the developer to provide access to a test platform that provides the evaluator with tools that are typically not found on consumer Mobile Device products.

Test 5: The evaluator shall enable encryption according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall use the test outlined for FCS\_CKM\_EXT.4, destroy keys/secrets according to the AGD guidance provided for FMT\_SMF\_EXT.1 and as defined in Test 1, Step 4 of the assurance activities specified following FCS\_CKM\_EXT.4.

#### 5.2.2.2.0 Extended: Encrypted Cryptographic Key Storage (FCS\_STG\_EXT.2)

The evaluator shall review the TSS to determine that the TSS includes key hierarchy description of the protection of each DEK for data-at-rest, of software-based key storage, and of KEK related to the protection of the DEKs and software-based key storage. This description must include a diagram illustrating the key hierarchy implemented by the TOE in order to demonstrate that the implementation meets FCS\_STG\_EXT.2. The description shall indicate how the functionality described by FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1 is invoked to generate DEKs (FCS\_CKM\_EXT.2), the key size (FCS\_CKM\_EXT.2 and FCS\_CKM\_EXT.3) for each key, how each KEK is formed (generated, derived, or combined according to FCS\_CKM\_EXT.3), the integrity protection method for each encrypted key (FCS\_STG\_EXT.3), and the IV generation for each key encrypted by the same KEK (FCS\_IV\_EXT.1). More detail for each task follows the corresponding requirement.

The evaluator shall examine the key hierarchy section of the TSS to ensure that each key (DEKs, software-based key storage, and KEKs) is encrypted by keys of equal or greater security strength using one of the selected modes.

The evaluator shall examine the key hierarchy description in the TSS section to verify that each DEK and software-stored key is encrypted according to FCS\_STG\_EXT.2.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 65 of 155

# 5.2.2.2.21 Extended: Integrity of Encrypted Key Storage (FCS\_STG\_EXT.3)

The evaluator shall examine the key hierarchy description in the TSS section to verify that each encrypted key is integrity protected according to one of the options in FCS\_STG\_EXT.3.

#### 5.2.2.2.2 Extended: EAP TLS Protocol (FCS\_TLS\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall check the description of the implementation of this protocol in the TSS to ensure that the ciphersuites supported are specified. The evaluator shall check the TSS to ensure that the ciphersuites specified include those listed for this component. The evaluator shall also check the operational guidance to ensure that it contains instructions on configuring the TOE so that TLS conforms to the description in the TSS.

The evaluator shall check that the AGD guidance contains instructions for the administrator to configure the list of Certificate Authorities that are allowed to sign certificates or to configure the FQDN of the authentication server certificate that will be accepted by the TOE in the EAP-TLS exchange.

Additional tests may be added in the future to test compliance with RFC 5246. The evaluator shall also perform the following tests:

- Test 1: The evaluator shall establish a TLS connection using each of the ciphersuites specified by the requirement. This connection may be established as part of the establishment of a higher-level protocol, e.g., as part of an EAP session. It is sufficient to observe the successful negotiation of a ciphersuite to satisfy the intent of the test; it is not necessary to examine the characteristics of the encrypted traffic in an attempt to discern the ciphersuite being used (for example, that the cryptographic algorithm is 128-bit AES and not 256-bit AES).
- Test 2: The following test is repeated for each supported certificate signing algorithm supported. The evaluator shall attempt to establish the connection using a server with a authentication server certificate that contains the Server Authentication purpose in the extendedKeyUsage field and verify that a connection is established. The evaluator will then verify that the client rejects an otherwise valid server certificate that lacks the Server Authentication purpose in the extendedKeyUsage field and a connection is not established. Ideally, the two certificates should be identical except for the extendedKeyUsage field.
- Test 3: Following the guidance provided by the AGD guidance, a CA or an FQDN will be configured as "acceptable" for authentication server certificates and then the evaluator will start a wireless connection and verify that the wireless client is able to successfully connect. The evaluator will then configure the system such that an otherwise valid certificate is signed by a CA that is not allowed by the TOE or presents a FQDN that is not allowed by the TOE. Attempts to authenticate to an authentication server presenting such a certificate should result in the connection being refused. If the TOE supports both methods of limiting the acceptable authentication servers, the evaluator shall repeat this test twice, once with each method.
- Test 4: The evaluator shall configure the authentication server to send a certificate in the TLS
  connection that the does not match the server-selected ciphersuite (for example, send a ECDSA
  certificate while using the TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_CBC\_SHA ciphersuite or send a RSA

Microsoft © 2015 Page 66 of 155

certificate while using one of the ECDSA ciphersuites.) The evaluator shall verify that the TOE disconnects after receiving the server's Certificate handshake message.

- *Test 5*: The evaluator shall setup a man-in-the-middle tool between the TOE and the authentication server and shall perform the following modifications to the traffic:
  - Modify at least one byte in the server's nonce in the Server Hello handshake message,
     and verify that the server denies the client's Finished handshake message.
  - Modify the server's selected ciphersuite in the Server Hello handshake message to be a ciphersuite not presented in the Client Hello handshake message. The evaluator shall verify that the client rejects the connection after receiving the Server Hello.
  - (conditional) If a DHE or ECDHE ciphersuite is supported, modify the signature block in the Server's KeyExchange handshake message, and verify that the client rejects the connection after receiving the Server KeyExchange.
  - Modify a byte in a CA field in the Server's Certificate Request handshake message. The
    modified CA field must not be the CA used to sign the client's certificate. The evaluator
    shall verify that the server rejects the connection after receiving the Client Finished
    handshake message.
  - Modify a byte in the Server Finished handshake message, and verify that the client sends a fatal alert upon receipt and does not send any application data.

# 5.2.2.23 Extended: TLS Protocol (FCS\_TLS\_EXT.2)

The evaluator shall check the description of the implementation of this protocol in the TSS to ensure that the ciphersuites supported are specified. The evaluator shall check the TSS to ensure that the ciphersuites specified include those listed for this component. The evaluator shall also check the operational guidance to ensure that it contains instructions on configuring the TOE so that TLS conforms to the description in the TSS.

The evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes how the DN in the certificate is compared to the expected DN. If the DN is not compared automatically to the Domain Name or IP address, the evaluator shall ensure that the AGD guidance includes configuration of the expected DN for the connection.

Additional tests may be added in the future to test compliance with RFC 5246. The evaluator shall also perform the following tests:

- Test 1: The evaluator shall establish a TLS connection using each of the ciphersuites specified by the requirement. This connection may be established as part of the establishment of a higher-level protocol, e.g., as part of an EAP session. It is sufficient to observe the successful negotiation of a ciphersuite to satisfy the intent of the test; it is not necessary to examine the characteristics of the encrypted traffic in an attempt to discern the ciphersuite being used (for example, that the cryptographic algorithm is 128-bit AES and not 256-bit AES).
- Test 2: The following test is repeated for each supported certificate signing algorithm supported. The evaluator shall attempt to establish the connection using a server with a server certificate that contains the Server Authentication purpose in the extendedKeyUsage field and verify that a connection is established. The evaluator will then verify that the client rejects an otherwise valid

Microsoft © 2015 Page 67 of 155

- server certificate that lacks the Server Authentication purpose in the extendedKeyUsage field and a connection is not established. Ideally, the two certificates should be identical except for the extendedKeyUsage field.
- Test 3: The evaluator shall attempt a connection with a certificate where the DN matches either the configured expected DN or the Domain Name/IP address of the peer. The evaluator shall verify that the TSF is able to successfully connect. The evaluator shall attempt a connection with a certificate where the DN does not match either the configured expected DN or the Domain Name/IP address of the peer. The evaluator shall verify that the TSF is not able to successfully connect.
- Test 4: The evaluator shall configure the server to send a certificate in the TLS connection that
  the does not match the server-selected ciphersuite (for example, send a ECDSA certificate while
  using the TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_CBC\_SHA ciphersuite or send a RSA certificate while using
  one of the ECDSA ciphersuites.) The evaluator shall verify that the TOE disconnects after
  receiving the server's Certificate handshake message.
- Test 5: The evaluator shall setup a man-in-the-middle tool between the TOE and the server and shall perform the following modifications to the traffic:
  - Modify at least one byte in the server's nonce in the Server Hello handshake message,
     and verify that the server denies the client's Finished handshake message.
  - Modify the server's selected ciphersuite in the Server Hello handshake message to be a ciphersuite not presented in the Client Hello handshake message. The evaluator shall verify that the client rejects the connection after receiving the Server Hello.
  - (conditional) If a DHE or ECDHE ciphersuite is supported, modify the signature block in the Server's KeyExchange handshake message, and verify that the client rejects the connection after receiving the Server KeyExchange.
  - Modify a byte in a CA field in the Server's Certificate Request handshake message. The modified CA field must not be the CA used to sign the client's certificate. The evaluator shall verify that the server rejects the connection after receiving the Client Finished handshake message.
  - Modify a byte in the Server Finished handshake message, and verify that the client sends a fatal alert upon receipt and does not send any application data.

#### 5.2.2.24 Extended: HTTPS Protocol (FCS HTTPS EXT.1)

The evaluator shall check the TSS to ensure that it is clear on how HTTPS uses TLS to establish an administrative session, focusing on any client authentication required by the TLS protocol vs. security administrator authentication which may be done at a different level of the processing stack. Testing for this activity is done as part of the TLS testing; this may result in additional testing if the TLS tests are done at the TLS protocol level.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 68 of 155

#### 5.2.2.3 User Data Protection

# 5.2.2.3.1 Extended: Security Attribute Based Access Control (FDP\_ACF\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall ensure the TSS lists all system services available for use by an application. The evaluator shall also ensure that the TSS describes how applications interface with these system services, and means by which these system services are protected by the TSF.

The TSS shall describe which of the following categories each system service falls in:

- 1) No applications are allowed access
- 2) Privileged applications are allowed access
- 3) Applications are allowed access by user authorization
- 4) All applications are allowed access

Privileged applications include any applications developed by the TSF developer. The TSS shall describe how privileges are granted to third-party applications. For both types of privileged applications, the TSS shall describe how and when the privileges are verified and how the TSF prevents unprivileged applications from accessing those services.

For any services for which the user may grant access, the evaluator shall ensure that the TSS identifies whether the user is prompted for authorization when the application is installed, or during runtime.

Assurance Activity Note: The following tests require the vendor to provide access to a test platform that provides the evaluator with tools that are typically not found on consumer Mobile Device products.

The evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide, applications for the purposes of the following tests.

Test 1: For each system service to which no applications are allowed access, the evaluator shall attempt to access the system service with a test application and verify that the application is not able to access that system service.

Test 2: For each system service to which only privileged applications are allowed access, the evaluator shall attempt to access the system service with an unprivileged application and verify that the application is not able to access that system service. The evaluator shall attempt to access the system service with a privileged application and verify that the application can access the service.

Test 3: For each system service to which the user may grant access, the evaluator shall attempt to access the system service with a test application. The evaluator shall ensure that either the system blocks such accesses or prompts for user authorization. The prompt for user authorization may occur at runtime or at installation time, and should be consistent with the behavior described in the TSS.

Test 4: For each system service listed in the TSS that is accessible by all applications, the evaluator shall test that an application can access that system service.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 69 of 155

# 5.2.2.3.2 Extended: Data at Rest Protection (FDP\_DAR\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall verify that the TSS section of the ST indicates which data is protected by the DAR implementation and what data is considered TSF data. The evaluator shall ensure that this data includes all protected data.

The evaluator shall review the AGD guidance to determine that the description of the configuration and use of the DAR protection does not require the user to perform any actions beyond configuration and providing the authentication credential. The evaluator shall also review the AGD guidance to determine that the configuration does not require the user to identify encryption on a per-file basis.

Assurance Activity Note: The following test require the developer to provide access to a test platform that provides the evaluator with tools that are typically not found on consumer Mobile Device products.

Test 1: The evaluator shall enable encryption according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall create user data (non-system) either by creating a file or by using an application. The evaluator shall use a tool provided by the developer to verify that this data is encrypted when the product is powered off, in conjunction with Test 1 for FIA\_UAU\_EXT.1.

#### 5.2.2.3.3 Extended: Certificate Data Storage (FDP\_STG\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall ensure the TSS describes the Trust Anchor Database implemented that contain certificates used to meet the requirements of this PP. This description shall contain information pertaining to how certificates are loaded into the store, and how the store is protected from unauthorized access (for example, unix permissions) in accordance with the permissions established in FMT\_SMF.1, FMT\_MOF.1(1), and FMT\_MOF.1(2).

# 5.2.2.3.4 Extended: Subset Information Flow Control (FDP\_IFC\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall verify that the TSS section of the ST describes the routing of IP traffic through processes on the TSF when a VPN client is enabled. The evaluator shall ensure that the description indicates which traffic does not go through the VPN and which traffic does and that a configuration exists for each baseband protocol in which only the traffic identified by the ST author as necessary for establishing the VPN connection (IKE traffic and perhaps HTTPS or DNS traffic) is not encapsulated by the VPN protocol (IPsec).

The evaluator shall verify that one (or more) of the following options is addressed by the documentation:

- The description above indicates that if a VPN client is enabled, all configurations route all IP traffic (other than IP traffic required to establish the VPN connection) through the VPN client.
- The AGD guidance describes how the user and/or administrator can configure the TSF to meet this requirement.
- The API documentation includes a security function that allows a VPN client to specify this routing.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 70 of 155

Test 1: If the ST author identifies any differences in the routing between Wi-Fi and cellular protocols, the evaluator shall repeat this test with a base station implementing one of the identified cellular protocols.

Step 1 - The evaluator shall enable a Wi-Fi configuration as described in the AGD guidance (as required by FTP\_ITC\_EXT.1). The evaluator shall use a packet sniffing tool between the wireless access point and an Internet-connected network. The evaluator shall turn on the sniffing tool and perform actions with the device such as navigating to websites, using provided applications, and accessing other Internet resources. The evaluator shall verify that the sniffing tool captures the traffic generated by these actions, turn off the sniffing tool, and save the session data.

Step 2 -The evaluator shall configure an IPsec VPN client that supports the routing specified in this requirement, and if necessary, configure the device to perform the routing specified as described in the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall turn on the sniffing tool, establish the VPN connection, and perform the same actions with the device as performed in the first step. The evaluator shall verify that the sniffing tool captures traffic generated by these actions, turn off the sniffing tool, and save the session data.

Step 3 - The evaluator shall examine the traffic from both step one and step two to verify that all IP traffic, aside from and after traffic necessary for establishing the VPN (such as IKE, DNS, and possibly HTTPS), is encapsulated by IPsec. The evaluator shall be aware that IP traffic on the cellular baseband outside of the IPsec tunnel may be emanating from the baseband processor and shall verify with the manufacturer that any identified traffic is not emanating from the application processor.

Step 4 - The evaluator shall attempt to send packets to the TOE outside the VPN tunnel (i.e. not through the VPN gateway), including from the local wireless network, and shall verify that the TOE discards them.

# 5.2.2.4 Identification and Authentication

# 5.2.2.4.1 Extended: Authorization Failure Handling (FIA\_AFL\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS describes that a value corresponding to the number of unsuccessful authentication attempts since the last successful authentication is kept for each user. The evaluator shall verify that the AGD guidance describes how the administrator configures the maximum number of unsuccessful authentication attempts and the remediation action to be performed when that maximum is met or surpassed.

Test 1: The evaluator shall configure according to the AGD guidance the device with a maximum number of unsuccessful authentication attempts and with a remediation action to be performed when that maximum is met or surpassed. The evaluator shall enter the locked state and enter incorrect passwords until the remediation action occurs. The evaluator shall verify that the number of password entries corresponds to the configured maximum and that the remediation action is implemented.

# 5.2.2.4.2 Extended: Bluetooth Authentication (FIA\_BLT\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS describes how data transfer is prevented before the Bluetooth pairing is completed. The TSS shall specifically call out any supported OBEX data transfer mechanisms.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 71 of 155

The evaluator shall ensure that the OBEX transfers are only completed after the Bluetooth devices are paired.

# 5.2.2.4.3 Extended: PAE Authentication (FIA\_PAE\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall perform the following tests:

- Test 1: The evaluator shall demonstrate that the TOE has no access to the test network. After successfully authenticating with an authentication server through a wireless access system, the evaluator shall demonstrate that the TOE does have access to the test network.
- Test 2: The evaluator shall demonstrate that the TOE has no access to the test network. The evaluator shall attempt to authenticate using an invalid client certificate, such that the EAP-TLS negotiation fails. This should result in the TOE still being unable to access the test network.
- Test 3: The evaluator shall demonstrate that the TOE has no access to the test network. The evaluator shall attempt to authenticate using an invalid authentication server certificate, such that the EAP-TLS negotiation fails. This should result in the TOE still being unable to access the test network.

# 5.2.2.4.4 Extended: Password Management (FIA\_PMG\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall examine the operational guidance to determine that it provides guidance to security administrators on the composition of strong passwords, and that it provides instructions on setting the minimum password length. The evaluator shall also perform the following tests. Note that one or more of these tests can be performed with a single test case.

Test 1: The evaluator shall compose passwords that either meet the requirements, or fail to meet the requirements, in some way. For each password, the evaluator shall verify that the TOE supports the password. While the evaluator is not required (nor is it feasible) to test all possible compositions of passwords, the evaluator shall ensure that all characters, rule characteristics, and a minimum length listed in the requirement are supported, and justify the subset of those characters chosen for testing.

# 5.2.2.4.5 Extended: Authorization Throttling (FIA\_TRT\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes the method by which authentication attempts are not able to be automated. The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS describes either how the TSF disables authentication via external interfaces (other than the ordinary user interface) or how authentication attempts are delayed in order to slow automated entry and shall ensure that this delay totals at least 500 milliseconds over 10 attempts.

# 5.2.2.4.6 Protected Authorization Feedback (FIA\_UAU.7)

The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS describes the means of obscuring the password entry. The evaluator shall verify that any configuration of this requirement is addressed in the AGD guidance and that the password is obscured by default.

*Test*: The evaluator shall enter passwords on the device, including at least the Password Authentication Factor at lockscreen, and verify that the password is not displayed on the device.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 72 of 155

## 5.2.2.4.7 Extended: Authentication for Cryptographic Operation (FIA\_UAU\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall verify that the TSS section of the ST describes the process for decrypting protected data and keys. The evaluator shall ensure that this process requires the user to enter a Password Authentication Factor and, in accordance with FCS\_CKM\_EXT.3, derives a KEK which is used to protect the software-based secure key storage and (optionally) DEK(s) for sensitive data, in accordance with FCS\_STG\_EXT.2.

The following tests may be performed in conjunction with FDP\_DAR\_EXT.1.

Assurance Activity Note: The following test require the developer to provide access to a test platform that provides the evaluator with tools that are typically not found on consumer Mobile Device products.

Test 1: The evaluator shall enable encryption of protected data and require user authentication according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide access to, an application that includes a unique string treated as protected data.

The evaluator shall reboot the device, use a tool provided by developer to search for the unique string amongst the application data, and verify that the unique string cannot be found. The evaluator shall enter the Password Authentication Factor to access full device functionality, use a tool provided by developer to search for the unique string amongst the application data, and verify that the unique string can be found.

Test 2: [conditional] The evaluator shall require user authentication according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide access to, an application that generates and stores a key in the software-based secure key storage.

The evaluator shall lock the device, use a tool provided by developer to search for the key amongst the application data, and verify that the key cannot be found. The evaluator shall enter the Password Authentication Factor to access full device functionality, use a tool provided by developer to search for the key amongst the application data, and verify that the unique string can be found.

Test 3: [conditional] The evaluator shall enable encryption of sensitive data and require user authentication according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide access to, an application that includes a unique string treated as sensitive data (this may be data or a key).

The evaluator shall lock the device, use a tool provided by developer to search for the unique string amongst the application data, and verify that the unique string cannot be found. The evaluator shall enter the Password Authentication Factor to access full device functionality, use a tool provided by developer to search for the unique string amongst the application data, and verify that the unique string can be found.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 73 of 155

## 5.2.2.4.8 Extended: Timing of Authentication (FIA\_UAU\_EXT.2)

The evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes the actions allowed by unauthorized users in the locked state. The evaluator shall attempt to perform some actions not listed in the selection while the device is in the locked state and verify that those actions do not succeed.

## 5.2.2.4.9 Extended: Re-Authorizing (FIA\_UAU\_EXT.3)

Test 1: The evaluator shall configure the TSF to use the Password Authentication Factor according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall change Password Authentication Factor according to the AGD guidance and verify that the TSF requires the entry of the Password Authentication Factor before allowing the factor to be changed.

Test 2: The evaluator shall configure the TSF to transition to the locked state after a time of inactivity (FMT\_SMF.1) according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall wait until the TSF locks and then verify that the TSF requires the entry of the Password Authentication Factor before transitioning to the unlocked state.

Test 3: The evaluator shall configure user-initiated locking according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall lock the TSF and then verify that the TSF requires the entry of the Password Authentication Factor before transitioning to the unlocked state.

## 5.2.2.4.10 Extended: Validation of Certificates (FIA\_X509\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall ensure the TSS describes where the check of validity of the certificates takes place. The evaluator ensures the TSS also provides a description of the certificate path validation algorithm.

The tests described must be performed in conjunction with the other Certificate Services assurance activities, including the use cases in FIA\_X509\_EXT.2.1 and FIA\_X509\_EXT.3. The tests for the extendedKeyUsage rules are performed in conjunction with the uses that require those rules.

Test 1: The evaluator shall demonstrate that validating a certificate without a valid certification path results in the function (application validation, trusted channel setup, or trusted software update) failing. The evaluator shall then load a certificate or certificates needed to validate the certificate to be used in the function, and demonstrate that the function succeeds. The evaluator then shall delete one of the certificates, and show that the function fails.

Test 2: The evaluator shall demonstrate that validating an expired certificate results in the function failing.

Test 3: The evaluator shall test that the TOE can properly handle revoked certificates — conditional on whether CRL or OCSP is selected; if both are selected, and then a test is performed for each method. The evaluator has to only test one up in the trust chain (future revisions may require to ensure the validation is done up the entire chain). The evaluator shall ensure that a valid certificate is used, and that the validation function succeeds. The evaluator then attempts the test with a certificate that will be revoked (for each method chosen in the selection) to ensure when the certificate is no longer valid that the validation function fails.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 74 of 155

Test 4: The evaluator shall construct a certificate path, such that the certificate of the CA issuing the TOE's certificate does not contain the basicConstraints extension. The validation of the certificate path fails.

Test 5: The evaluator shall construct a certificate path, such that the certificate of the CA issuing the TOE's certificate has the cA flag in the basicConstraints extension not set. The validation of the certificate path fails.

*Test 6*: The evaluator shall construct a certificate path, such that the certificate of the CA issuing the TOE's certificate has the cA flag in the basicConstraints extension set to TRUE. The validation of the certificate path succeeds.

## 5.2.2.4.11 Extended: X.509 Certificate Authentication (FIA\_X509\_EXT.2)

The evaluator shall check the TSS to ensure that it describes how the TOE chooses which certificates to use, and any necessary instructions in the administrative guidance for configuring the operating environment so that the TOE can use the certificates.

The evaluator shall examine the TSS to confirm that it describes the behavior of the TOE when a connection cannot be established during the validity check of a certificate used in establishing a trusted channel. If the requirement that the administrator is able to specify the default action, then the evaluator shall ensure that the operational guidance contains instructions on how this configuration action is performed.

The evaluator shall perform Test 1 for each function listed in FIA\_X509\_EXT.2.1 that requires the use of certificates:

Test 1: The evaluator shall demonstrate that using a certificate without a valid certification path results in the function failing. Using the administrative guidance, the evaluator shall then load a certificate or certificates needed to validate the certificate to be used in the function, and demonstrate that the function succeeds. The evaluator then shall delete one of the certificates, and show that the function fails.

Test 2: The evaluator shall demonstrate that using a valid certificate that requires certificate validation checking to be performed in at least some part by communicating with a non-TOE IT entity. The evaluator shall then manipulate the environment so that the TOE is unable to verify the validity of the certificate, and observe that the action selected in FIA\_X509\_EXT.2.2 is performed. If the selected action is administrator-configurable, then the evaluator shall follow the operational guidance to determine that all supported administrator-configurable options behave in their documented manner.

The assurance activity for FIA\_X509\_EXT.2.4 this requirement is performed in conjunction with the assurance activity for FIA\_X509\_EXT.2.1 and FIA\_X509\_EXT.2.2.

**For FIA\_X509\_EXT.2.5** the evaluator shall check to ensure that the operational guidance contains instructions on generating a Certificate Request Message. The evaluator shall also perform the following test.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 75 of 155

Test 1: The evaluator shall use the operational guidance to cause the TOE to generate a certificate request message. The evaluator shall confirm that they are able to provide the public key, Common Name, Organization, Organizational Unit, and Country as input into this request. The evaluator shall capture the generated message and ensure that it conforms with the format specified by RFC 2986.

## 5.2.2.4.12 Extended: Request Validation of Certificates (FIA\_X509\_EXT.3)

The evaluator shall verify that the API documentation provided according to Section 6.2.1 includes the security function (certificate validation) described in this requirement. This documentation shall be clear as to which results indicate success and failure.

The evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide access to, an application that requests certificate validation by the TSF. The evaluator shall verify that the results from the validation match the expected results according to the API documentation. This application may be used to verify that import, removal, modification, and validation are performed correctly according to the tests required by FDP\_STG\_EXT.1, FDP\_ITC\_EXT.1, FMT\_SMF.1.1 function 14, and FIA\_X509\_EXT.1.

## 5.2.2.5 Security Management

## 5.2.2.5.1 Management of Security Functions Behavior by the User (FMT\_MOF.1(USER))

The evaluation shall verify that the TSS describes those management functions which may only be performed by the user in conjunction with the TSS description for FMT\_SMF.1.

## 5.2.2.5.2 Management of Security Functions Behavior by the Organization (FMT\_MOF.1(ORG))

Test 1: The evaluator shall use the test environment to deploy policies to mobile devices.

Test 2: The evaluator shall create policies which collectively include all management functions which are controlled by the (enterprise) administrator and cannot be overridden by the user as defined in FMT\_MOF.1.1(2). The evaluator shall apply these policies to devices, attempt to override each setting as the user, and ensure that the TSF does not permit it.

#### 5.2.2.5.3 Specifications of Management Functions (FMT SMF.1)

The following activities shall take place in the test environment described in the Assurance Activity for FPT\_TUD\_EXT.1.1, FPT\_TUD\_EXT.1.2, FPT\_TUD\_EXT.1.3, and FPT\_TUD\_EXT.1.4. The evaluator shall consult the AGD guidance to perform each of the following tests, iterating each test as necessary if both the user and administrator may perform the function. The following test numbers correspond to the function numbers.

Test 1: The evaluator shall exercise the TSF configuration as the administrator and perform positive and negative tests, with at least two assignments for each variable setting, for each of the following:

- minimum password length
- minimum password complexity
- maximum password lifetime

Microsoft © 2015 Page 76 of 155

Test 2: The evaluator shall exercise the TSF configuration as the user and the administrator. The evaluator shall perform positive and negative tests, with at least two assignments for each variable setting, for each of the following.

- screen-lock enabled/disabled
- screen lock timeout
- number of authentication failures (may be combined with test for FIA AFL.1)

*Test 3*: The evaluator shall exercise the TSF configuration to enable the VPN protection. These configuration actions must be used for the testing of the FDP\_IFC.1.1 requirement.

Test 4: The evaluator shall exercise the TSF configuration as both the user and administrator to enable and disable the state of each radio (e.g. Wi-Fi, GPS, cellular, NFC, Bluetooth) listed by the ST author. For each radio, the evaluator shall use a spectrum analyzer and a RF- shielded environment to verify the existence of signals when the radio is enabled and the absence of signals when the radio is disabled. The evaluator shall verify the absence of signals during device reboot and casual usage.

Test 5: The evaluator shall exercise the TSF configuration as both the user and administrator to enable and disable the state of each audio or visual collection devices (e.g. camera, microphone) listed by the ST author. For each collection device, the evaluator shall disable the device and then attempt to use its functionality.

Test 6: The evaluator shall create a test environment consisting of a wireless access system and an authentication server for the purpose of tests 6 and 7. The evaluator shall specify the wireless network and wireless network settings according to the AGD guidance both as an administrator and as a user. The evaluator shall specify a value for each management function according to the configuration of the test network. Minimally, the evaluator shall test a WPA2 Enterprise network using EAP-TLS. The evaluator shall verify that the TSF can establish a connection to the network.

Test 7: The evaluator shall specify a wireless network with an incorrect value for WLAN authentication server and verify that the mobile device cannot connect to the WLAN. The evaluator shall repeat this test, setting incorrect values for the security type and authentication protocol individually and verify that the mobile device cannot connect to the WLAN.

Test 8 & 9: The evaluator shall use the test environment to instruct the TSF, as the administrator, to command the device to:

- transition to a locked state
- perform a wipe of all data

The evaluator must ensure that the device transitions to the locked state upon command. The evaluator must ensure that this management setup is used when conducting the assurance activities in FCS\_CKM\_EXT.5.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 77 of 155

- Test 10: The evaluator shall exercise the TSF configuration as the administrator to restrict particular applications, sources of applications, or application installation according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall attempt to install denied applications and ensure that this is not possible.
- Test 11 & 12: The test of these functions is performed in association with FCS\_STG\_EXT.1.
- Test 13: The evaluator shall review the AGD guidance to determine that it describes the steps needed to import, modify, or remove certificates in the Trust Anchor database. The evaluator shall import certificates according to the AGD guidance as the user or as the administrator. The evaluator shall verify that no errors occur during import.
- Test 14: The evaluator shall remove an administrator-imported certificate and any other categories of certificates included in the assignment of function 15 from the Trust Anchor Database according to the AGD guidance as the user and as the administrator.
- *Test 15*: The evaluator shall verify that user approval is required to enroll the device into management and includes a description of each type of management function that will be enforced.
- *Test 16*: The evaluator shall attempt to remove applications according to the AGD guidance and verify that the TOE no longer permits users to access those applications or their associated data.
- Test 17 & 18: The evaluator shall attempt to update the TSF system software (if updates are available) and install mobile applications and verify that updates correctly install and that the version numbers of the system software and of the mobile applications increase.
- Test 19: [conditional] The evaluator shall exercise the TSF configuration to enable and disable data transfer capabilities over each externally accessible hardware ports (e.g. USB, SD card, HDMI) listed by the ST author. The evaluator shall use test equipment for the particular interface to ensure that no low-level signalling is occurring on all pins used for data transfer when they are disabled.
- Test 20: [conditional] The evaluator shall attempt to disable each listed protocol in the assignment, which should include tethering uses. The evaluator shall verify that remote devices can no longer access the TOE or TOE resources using any disabled protocols.
- Test 21: [conditional] The evaluator shall exercise the TSF configuration as both the user and administrator to enable and disable any developer mode. The evaluator shall test that developer mode access is not available when its configuration is disabled. The evaluator shall verify the developer mode remains disabled during device reboot.
- Test 22, 23, & 24: [conditional] The evaluator shall exercise the TSF configuration as both the user and administrator to enable system-wide data-at-rest protection according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall ensure that all assurance activities for DAR (see Section 5.3.2) are conducted with the device in this configuration. The evaluator shall disable any "Forgot Password" feature and ensure that the device does not offer any password hints.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 78 of 155

Test 25: [conditional]: The evaluator shall establish an APN for the test network, configure the private APN onto the device. The evaluator shall then send packets to the publically routable Internet (perhaps using a tool provided by the developer). The evaluator shall observe that these packets are reaching the APN termination point and not arriving via the carrier's internet access gateway. The evaluator shall repeat the test with a different or invalid APN on the device, and verify that the packets do not reach the APN termination point.

Test 26: [conditional] The evaluator shall disable the Discoverable mode and verify that no new Bluetooth peripherals can connect to the device. The evaluator shall disallow each Bluetooth version and attempt to connect a Bluetooth peripheral to the device. The evaluator shall verify with a Bluetooth protocol analysis tool that the TOE does not perform disabled versions or list the disabled versions as supported by the TOE during pairing negotiations with a Bluetooth peripheral. The evaluator shall, according to the selection, restrict which pairing mechanisms are allowed by the TOE (via Bluetooth profiles or particular pairing protocols). The evaluator shall verify with a Bluetooth protocol analysis tool that the TOE does not perform disabled pairing mechanism or list the disabled mechanism as supported by the TOE during pairing negotiations with a Bluetooth peripheral.

Test 27: [conditional] For each category of information listed in the AGD guidance, the evaluator shall verify that when that TSF is configured to limit the information according to the AGD, the information is no longer displayed in the locked state.

Test 28: [conditional] The evaluator shall attempt to wipe sensitive data resident on the device according to the administrator guidance. The evaluator shall verify that the data is no longer accessible by the user.

Test 29: [conditional] The evaluator shall configure the device to alert the administrator according to the administrator guidance (for example, by configuring a trigger that causes an alert to the MDM). The evaluator shall verify that the administrator receives an alert for the device.

*Test 30*: [conditional] The evaluator shall attempt to remove any Enterprise applications from the device by following the administrator guidance. The evaluator shall verify that the TOE no longer permits users to access those applications or their associated data.

*Test 31*: [conditional] The evaluator shall also verify that the API documentation provided according to Section 6.2.1<sup>13</sup> includes any security functions (import, modification, or destruction of the Trust Anchor Database) allowed by applications.

If applications may import certificates to the Trust Anchor Database. The evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide access to, an application that imports a certificate into the Trust Anchor Database. The evaluator shall verify that the TOE requires approval before allowing the application to import the certificate:

Microsoft © 2015 Page 79 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>13</sup> This is the plaintext storage requirement (FPT KST EXT.1).

- The evaluator shall deny the approvals to verify that the application is not able to import the
  certificate. Failure of import shall be tested by attempting to validate a certificate that chains to
  the certificate whose import was attempted (as described in the Assurance Activity for
  FIA X509 EXT.1).
- The evaluator shall repeat the test, allowing the approval to verify that the application is able to import the certificate and that validation occurs.

If applications may remove certificates in the Trust Anchor Database, the evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide access to, an application that removes certificates from the Trust Anchor Database. The evaluator shall verify that the TOE requires approval before allowing the application to remove the certificate:

The evaluator shall deny the approvals to verify that the application is not able to remove the
certificate. Failure of removal shall be tested by attempting to validate a certificate that chains
to the certificate whose removal was attempted (as described in the Assurance Activity for
FIA\_X509\_EXT.1).

The evaluator shall repeat the test, allowing the approval to verify that the application is able to remove/modify the certificate and that validation no longer occurs.

Test 32: [conditional] The test of this function is performed in conjunction with FIA\_X509\_EXT.2.2.

Test 33: [conditional] The evaluator shall attempt to disable all cellular voice functionality according to the administrator guidance. The evaluator shall then attempt to place a call on the TOE as the user and verify that the function fails. The evaluator shall also attempt to call the TOE and verify that the call cannot be completed.

Test 34: [conditional] The evaluator shall attempt to disable all device messaging functionality according to the administrator guidance. The evaluator shall then attempt to send a message on the TOE as the user and verify that the function fails. The evaluator shall also attempt to send a message to the TOE and verify that the message is not received.

*Test 35*: [conditional] The evaluator shall attempt to disable each cellular protocol according to the administrator guidance. The evaluator shall attempt to connect the device to a cellular network and, using network analysis tools, verify that the device does not allow negotiation of the disabled protocols.

Test 36: [conditional] The evaluator shall attempt to disable voice control functionality and shall verify that the TOE no longer performs any actions upon being given a voice command.

Test 37: [conditional] The evaluator shall attempt to read any device audit logs according to the administrator guidance and verify that the logs may be read. This test may be performed in conjunction with the assurance activity of FAU\_GEN.1.

Test 38: [conditional] The test of this function is performed in conjunction with FPT\_TUD\_EXT.2.5.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 80 of 155

Test 39 & 40: [conditional] The test of these functions is performed in conjunction with FCS\_STG\_EXT.1.

Test 41: [conditional] The test of this function is performed in conjunction with FTA\_TAB.1.

## 5.2.2.5.4 Extended: Specification of Remediation Actions (FMT\_SMF\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall use the test environment to iteratively configure the device to perform each remediation action in the selection upon unenrollment. The evaluator shall unenroll the device according to AGD guidance and verify that the remediation action configured is performed.

## **5.2.2.6** Protection of the TSF

## 5.2.2.6.1 Extended: Anti-Exploitation Services for Address Space Layout Randomization (FPT\_AEX\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS section of the ST describes how the 8 bits are generated and provides a justification as to why those bits are unpredictable.

Assurance Activity Note: The following test require the developer to provide access to a test platform that provides the evaluator with tools that are typically not found on consumer Mobile Device products.

Test 1: The evaluator shall select 3 apps included with the TSF. These must include any web browser or mail client included with the TSF. For each of these apps, the evaluator will launch the same app on two separate mobile devices of the same type and compare all memory mapping locations. The evaluator must ensure that no memory mappings are placed in the same location on both devices.

If the rare (at most 1/256) chance occurs that two mappings are the same for a single app and not the same for the other two apps, the evaluator shall repeat the test with that app to verify that in the second test the mappings are different.

**For FPT\_AEX\_EXT.1.3 and FPT\_AEX\_EXT.1.3**, the evaluator shall ensure that the TSS section of the ST describes how the 4 bits are generated and provides a justification as to why those bits are unpredictable.

Assurance Activity Note: The following test require the developer to provide access to a test platform that provides the evaluator with tools that are typically not found on consumer Mobile Device products.

Test 1: The evaluator shall reboot the TOE at least five times. For each of these reboots, the evaluator shall examine memory mapping locations of the kernel. The evaluator must ensure that no memory mappings are placed in the same location on both devices.

# 5.2.2.6.2 Extended: Anti-Exploitation Services for Memory Page Permissions (FPT\_AEX\_EXT.2) The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS describes of the memory management unit (MMU), and ensures that this description documents the ability of the MMU to enforce read, write, and execute permissions

on all pages of virtual memory.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 81 of 155

**For FPT\_AEX\_EXT.2.2**, the evaluator shall ensure that the TSS describes of the memory management unit (MMU), and ensures that this description documents the ability of the MMU to enforce write XOR execute permissions.

## 5.2.2.6.3 Extended: Anti-Exploitation Services for Stack Overflow Protection (FPT AEX EXT.3)

The evaluator shall determine that the TSS contains a description of stack-based buffer overflow protections implemented in the TSF software which runs in the non-privileged execution mode of the application processor. The exact implementation of stack-based buffer overflow protection will vary by platform. Example implementations may be activated through compiler options such as "-fstack-protector-all", "-fstack-protector", and "GS" flags. The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS contains an inventory of TSF binaries and libraries, indicating those that implement stack-based buffer overflow protections as well as those that do not. The TSS must provide a rationale for those binaries and libraries that are not protected in this manner.

## 5.2.2.6.4 Extended: Domain Isolation (FPT\_AEX\_EXT.4)

The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS describes the mechanisms that are in place that prevents non-TSF software from modifying the TSF software or TSF data that governs the behavior of the TSF. These mechanisms could range from hardware-based means (e.g. "execution rings" and memory management functionality); to software-based means (e.g. boundary checking of inputs to APIs). The evaluator determines that the described mechanisms appear reasonable to protect the TSF from modification.

The evaluator shall ensure the TSS describes how the TSF ensures that the address spaces of applications are kept separate from one another.

Assurance Activity Note: The following tests require the vendor to provide access to a test platform that provides the evaluator with tools that are typically not found on consumer Mobile Device products. In addition, the vendor provides a list of files (e.g., system files, libraries, configuration files) that make up the TSF. This list could be organized by folders/directories (e.g., /usr/sbin, /etc), as well as individual files that may exist outside of the identified directories.

Test 1: The evaluator shall check the "permission settings" for each file in vendor provided list of files that make up the TSF and ensure the settings are appropriate for preventing writing by untrusted applications. The evaluator shall attempt to modify a file of their choosing to ensure the mechanism enforces the permission settings and prevents modification.

Test 2: The evaluator shall create and load an app onto the mobile device. This app shall attempt to traverse over all file systems and report any locations to which data can be written or overwritten. The evaluator must ensure that none of these locations are part of the OS software, device drivers, system and security configuration files, key material, or another application's image/data.

## 5.2.2.6.5 Extended: Plaintext Key Storage (FPT\_KST\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall consult the TSS section of the ST in performing the assurance activities for this requirement.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 82 of 155

In performing their review, the evaluator shall determine that the TSS contains a description of the activities that happen on power-up and password authentication relating to the decryption of DEKs, stored keys, and data.

The evaluator shall ensure that the description also covers how the cryptographic functions in the FCS requirements are being used to perform the encryption functions, including how the KEKs, DEKs, and stored keys are unwrapped, saved, and used by the TOE so as to prevent plaintext from being written to non-volatile storage. The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS describes, for each power-down scenario how the TOE ensures that all keys in non-volatile storage are wrapped with a KEK.

The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS describes how other functions available in the system (e.g., regeneration of the keys) ensure that no unencrypted key material is present in persistent storage.

The evaluator shall review the TSS to determine that it makes a case that key material is not written unencrypted to the persistent storage.

## 5.2.2.6.6 Extended: No Key Transmission (FPT\_KST\_EXT.2)

The evaluator shall consult the TSS section of the ST in performing the assurance activities for this requirement. The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS describes the cryptographic module boundary. The cryptographic module may very well be a particular kernel module, the Operating System, the Application Processor, or up to the entire Mobile Device.

In performing their review, the evaluator shall determine that the TSS contains a description of the activities that happen on power-up and password authentication relating to the decryption of DEKs, stored keys, and data.

The evaluator shall ensure that the TSS describes how other functions available in the system (e.g., regeneration of the keys) ensure that no unencrypted key material is transmitted outside the cryptographic module.

The evaluator shall review the TSS to determine that it makes a case that key material is not transmitted outside the cryptographic module.

## 5.2.2.6.7 Extended: No Plaintext Key Transport (FPT\_KST\_EXT.3)

The ST author will provide a statement of their policy for handling and protecting keys. The evaluator shall check to ensure the TSS describes a policy in line with not exporting either plaintext DEKs, KEKs, or keys stored in the secure key storage.

## 5.2.2.6.8 Extended: Self-Test Event Notification (FPT\_NOT\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes critical failures that may occur and the actions to be taken upon these critical failures.

Assurance Activity Note: The following test require the developer to provide access to a test platform that provides the evaluator with tools that are typically not found on consumer Mobile Device products.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 83 of 155

Test 1: The evaluator shall use a tool provided by the developer to modify files and processes in the system that correspond to critical failures specified in the second list. The evaluator shall verify that creating these critical failures causes the device to take the remediation actions specified in the first list.

## 5.2.2.6.9 Reliable Time Stamps (FPT\_STM.1)

The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that it lists each security function that makes use of time. The TSS provides a description of how the time is maintained and considered reliable in the context of each of the time related functions. This documentation must identify whether the TSF uses GPS, a NTP server, or the carrier's network time as the primary time sources and whether any or all of these sources is configurable.

The evaluator examines the operational guidance to ensure it instructs the administrator how to set the time. If the TOE supports the use of an NTP server, the operational guidance instructs how a communication path is established between the TOE and the NTP server, and any configuration of the NTP client on the TOE to support this communication.

## 5.2.2.6.10 Extended: TSF Cryptographic Functionality Testing (FPT\_TST\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall examine the TSS to ensure that it specifies the self-tests that are performed at start-up. This description must include an outline of the test procedures conducted by the TSF (e.g., rather than saying "memory is tested", a description similar to "memory is tested by writing a value to each memory location and reading it back to ensure it is identical to what was written" shall be used). The TSS must include any error states that they TSF may enter when self tests fail, and the conditions and actions necessary to exit the error states and resume normal operation. The evaluator shall verify that the TSS indicates these self-tests are run at start-up automatically, and do not involve any inputs from or actions by the user or operator.

The evaluator shall inspect the list of self-tests in the TSS and verify that it includes algorithm self tests. The algorithm self tests will typically be conducted using known answer tests.

## 5.2.2.6.11 Extended: TSF Integrity Testing (FPT\_TST\_EXT.2)

The evaluator shall verify that the TSS section of the ST includes a description of the boot procedures of the software for the TSF's Application Processor. The evaluator shall ensure that before loading the bootloader for the operating system and the kernel, the bootloader and kernel software is cryptographically verified. The evaluator shall verify that the TSS contains a justification for the protection of the cryptographic key or hash, preventing it from being modified by unverified or unauthenticated software. The evaluator shall verify that the TSS contains a description of the protection afforded to the mechanism performing the cryptographic verification.

**For FPT\_TST\_EXT.2.2**, the evaluator shall verify that the TSS section of the ST includes a description of the boot procedures of the software for the TSF's application processor and baseband processor. The evaluator shall ensure that before loading any executable code, that code is cryptographically verified. The evaluator shall verify that the TSS contains a justification for the protection of the cryptographic keys or hashes, preventing them from being modified by unverified or unauthenticated software.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 84 of 155

## 5.2.2.6.12 Extended: Trusted Update: TSF Version Query (FPT\_TUD\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall establish a test environment consisting of the mobile device and any supporting software that demonstrates usage of the management functions. This can be test software from the developer, a reference implementation of management software from the developer, or other commercially available software. The evaluator shall set up the mobile device and the other software to exercise the management functions according to provided guidance documentation.

Test 1: Using the AGD guidance provided, the evaluator shall test that the administrator and user can query:

- the current version of the TSF operating system and any firmware that can be updated separately
- the hardware model of the TSF
- the current version of all installed mobile applications

The evaluator must review manufacturer documentation to ensure that the hardware model identifier is sufficient to identify the hardware which comprises the device.

## 5.2.2.6.13 Extended: Trusted Update Verification (FPT\_TUD\_EXT.2)

The evaluator shall verify that the TSS section of the ST describes the TSF software update mechanism for updating the system software. The evaluator shall verify that the description includes a digital signature verification of the software before installation and that installation fails if the verification fails. The evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes the method by which the digital signature is verified and that the public key used to verify the signature is either hardware-protected or is validated to chain to a public key in the Trust Anchor Database. If hardware-protection is selected, the evaluator shall verify that the method of hardware-protection is described and that the ST author has justified why the public key may not be modified by unauthorized parties.

[conditional] If the ST author indicates that the public key for software update digital signature verification, the evaluator shall verify that the update mechanism includes a certificate validation according to FIA\_X509\_EXT.1 and a check for the Code Signing purpose in the extendedKeyUsage.

The evaluator shall verify that the ST author has provided evidence that the following tests were performed:

Test 1: The tester shall try to install an update without the digital signature and shall verify that installation fails. The tester shall attempt to install an update with digital signature, and verify that installation succeeds.

Test 2: The tester shall digitally sign the update with a key disallowed by the device and verify that installation fails. The tester shall digitally sign the update with the allowed key and verify that installation succeeds.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 85 of 155

Test 3: [conditional] The tester shall digitally sign the update with an invalid certificate and verify that update installation fails. The tester shall digitally sign the application with a certificate that does not have the Code Signing purpose and verify that application installation fails.

The evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes how mobile application software is verified at installation. The evaluator shall ensure that this method uses a digital signature.

Test 1: The evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide access to, an application. The evaluator shall try to install this application without a digitally signature and shall verify that installation fails. The evaluator shall attempt to install a digitally signed application, and verify that installation succeeds.

**For FPT\_TUD\_EXT.2.5**, the evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes how mobile application software is verified at installation. The evaluator shall ensure that this method uses a digital signature by a code signing certificate.

Test 1: The evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide access to, an application. The evaluator shall try to install this application without a digitally signature and shall verify that installation fails. The evaluator shall attempt to install an application digitally signed with an appropriate certificate, and verify that installation succeeds.

Test 2: The evaluator shall digitally sign the application with an invalid certificate and verify that application installation fails. The evaluator shall digitally sign the application with a certificate that does not have the Code Signing purpose and verify that application installation fails. This test may be performed in conjunction with the assurance activities for FIA\_X509\_EXT.1.

Test 3: The evaluator shall configure the device to limit the public keys that can sign application software according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall digitally sign the application with a certificate disallowed by the device or configuration and verify that application installation fails. The evaluator shall attempt to install an application digitally signed with an authorized certificate and verify that application installation succeeds.

**For FPT\_TUD\_EXT.2.6**, the evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes the mechanism that prevents the TSF from installing software updates that are an older version that the currently installed version.

Test 1: The evaluator shall attempt to install an earlier version of software and shall verify that the update fails.

Test 2: The evaluator shall attempt to install a current or later version and shall verify that the update succeeds.

### **5.2.2.7 TOE Access**

## 5.2.2.7.1 Extended: TSF- and User-initiated Locked State (FTA\_SSL\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall verify the TSS describes the actions performed upon transitioning to the locked state. The evaluation shall verify that the AGD guidance describes the method of setting the inactivity

Microsoft © 2015 Page 86 of 155

interval and of commanding a lock. The evaluator shall verify that the TSS describes the information allowed to be displayed to unauthorized users.

Test 1: The evaluator shall configure the TSF to transition to the locked state after a time of inactivity (FMT\_SMF.1) according to the AGD guidance. The evaluator shall wait until the TSF locks and verify that the display is cleared or overwritten and that the only actions allowed in the locked state are unlocking the session and those actions specified in FIA\_UAU\_EXT.2.

Test 2: The evaluator shall command the TSF to transition to the locked state according to the AGD guidance as both the user and the administrator. The evaluator shall wait until the TSF locks and verify that the display is cleared or overwritten and that the only actions allowed in the locked state are unlocking the session and those actions specified in FIA UAU EXT.2.

## 5.2.2.7.2 Extended: Wireless Network Access (FTA\_WSE\_EXT.1)

The assurance activity for this requirement is performed in conjunction with the assurance activity for FMT\_SMF.1.

## 5.2.2.7.3 Default TOE Access Banners (FTA\_TAB.1)

The TSS shall describe when the banner is displayed. The evaluator shall also perform the following test:

Test 1: The evaluator follows the operational guidance to configure a notice and consent warning message. The evaluator shall then start up or unlock the TSF. The evaluator shall verify that the notice and consent warning message is displayed in each instance described in the TSS.

## 5.2.2.8 Trusted Path/Channels

## 5.2.2.8.1 Extended: Trusted Channel Communication (FTP\_ITC\_EXT.1)

The evaluator shall verify that the API documentation provided according to Section 6.2.1 includes the security functions (trusted channel) described in these requirements. The evaluator shall write, or the developer shall provide access to, an application that requests trusted channel services by the TSF. The evaluator shall verify that the results from the trusted channel match the expected results according to the API documentation. This application may be used to assist in verifying the trusted channel assurance activities for the protocol requirements.

The evaluator shall examine the TSS to determine that it describes the details of the TOE connecting to an access point in terms of the cryptographic protocols specified in the requirement, along with TOE-specific options or procedures that might not be reflected in the specification. The evaluator shall also confirm that all protocols listed in the TSS are specified and included in the requirements in the ST. The evaluator shall confirm that the operational guidance contains instructions for establishing the connection to the access point. The evaluator shall also perform the following tests:

Test 1: The evaluators shall ensure that the TOE is able to initiate communications with an access point using the protocols specified in the requirement, setting up the connections as described in the operational guidance and ensuring that communication is successful.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 87 of 155

Test 2: The evaluator shall ensure, for each communication channel with an authorized IT entity, the channel data is not sent in plaintext.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 88 of 155

## **6 TOE Summary Specification (TSS)**

This chapter describes the Windows Security Functions (SFs) which satisfy the security functional requirements of the Mobile Device Fundamentals protection profile. The TOE also includes additional relevant security functions which are also described in the following sections, as well as a mapping to the security functional requirements satisfied by the TOE.

## 6.1 Product Architecture

## **6.2 TOE Security Functions**

This section presents the TOE Security Functions (TSFs) and a mapping of security functions to Security Functional Requirements (SFRs). The TOE performs the following security functions:

- Audit
- Cryptographic Support
- User Data Protection
- Identification and Authentication
- Security Management
- Protection of the TSF
- TOE Access
- Trusted Path / Channels

## **6.2.1** Audit

The TOE Audit security function performs:

- Audit Collection
- Selective Audit
- Audit Log Overflow Protection
- Audit Log Restricted Access Protection

Windows also implements audit log review, however that capability is outside the scope of the Mobile Device Fundamentals protection profile.

## 6.2.1.1 Audit Collection

The Windows Event Log service creates the security event log, which contains security relevant audit records collected on a system, along with other event logs which are also registered by other audit entry providers. The Local Security Authority (LSA) server collects audit events from all other parts of the TSF and forwards them to the Windows Event Log service which will place the event into the log for the appropriate provider. While there is no size limit for a single audit record, the authorized administrator can specify a limit for the size of each event log. For each audit event, the Windows Event Log service stores the following data in each audit entry:

Microsoft © 2015 Page 89 of 155

**Table 6-1 Standard Fields in a Windows Audit Entry** 

| Field in Audit Entry | Description  |
|----------------------|--|
| Date                 | The date the event occurred.   |
| Time                 | The time the event occurred.   |
| User                 | The security identifier (SID) of that represents the user on whose     |
|                      | behalf the event occurred that represents the user.                    |
| Event ID             | A unique number within the audit category that identifies the          |
|                      | specific audit event.  |
| Source               | The Windows component that generated the audit event.                  |
| Outcome              | Indicates whether the security audit event recorded is the result of a |
|                      | successful or failed attempt to perform the action.                    |
| Category             | The type of the event defined by the event source.                     |

The LSA service defines the following categories for audit events in the security log:

- System,
- Logon / Logoff
- Object Access
- Directory Service Access
- Privilege Use
- Detailed Process Tracking
- Policy Change
- Account Management
- Account Logon

Each audit entry may also contain category-specific data that is contained in the body of the entry as described below:

- For the System Category, the audit entry includes information relating to the system such as the time the audit trail was cleared, start or shutdown of the audit function, and startup and shutdown of Windows. Furthermore, the specific cryptographic operation is identified when such operations are audited.
- For the Logon and Account Logon Category, the audit entry includes the reason the attempted logon failed.
- For the Object Access and the Directory Service Access Category, the audit entry includes the object name and the desired access requested.
- For the Privilege Use Category, the audit entry identifies the privilege.
- For the Detailed Process Tracking Category, the audit event includes the process identifier.
- For the Policy Change and Account Management Category, the audit event includes the new values of the policy or account attributes.
- For the Account Logon Category, the audit event includes the logon type that indicates the source of the logon attempt as one of the following types in the audit record:

Microsoft © 2015 Page 90 of 155

- Interactive (local logon)
- Network (logon from the network)
- Service (logon as a service)
- Batch (logon as a batch job)
- Unlock (for Unlock screen saver)
- Network\_ClearText (for anonymous authentication to IIS)

There are two places within the TSF where security audit events are collected. Inside the kernel, the Security Reference Monitor (SRM), a part of the NT Executive, is responsible for generation of all audit entries for the object access, privilege use, and detailed process tracking event categories. Windows components can request the SRM to generate an audit record and supply all of the elements in the audit record except for the system time, which the Executive provides. With one exception, audit events for the other event categories are generated by various services that either co-exist in the LSA server or call, with the SeAuditPrivilege privilege, the Authz Report Audit interfaces implemented in the LSA Policy subcomponent. The exception is that the Event Log Service itself records an event record when the security log is cleared and when the security log exceeds the warning level configured by the authorized administrator.

The LSA server maintains an audit policy in its database that determines which categories of events are actually collected. Defining and modifying the audit policy is restricted to the authorized administrator. The authorized administrator can select events to be audited by selecting the category or categories to be audited. An authorized administrator can individually select each category. Those services in the security process determine the current audit policy via direct local function calls. The only other TSF component that uses the audit policy is the SRM in order to record object access, privilege use, and detailed tracking audit. LSA and the SRM share a private local connection port, which is used to pass the audit policy to the SRM. When an authorized administrator changes the audit policy, the LSA updates its database and notifies the SRM. The SRM receives a control flag indicating if auditing is enabled and a data structure indicating that the events in particular categories to audit.

In addition to the system-wide audit policy configuration, it is possible to define a per-user audit policy using auditpol.exe. This allows individual audit categories (of success or failure) to be enabled or disabled on a per user basis. <sup>14</sup> The per-user audit policy refines the system-wide audit policy with a more precise definition of the audit policy for which events will be audited for a specific user.

Within each category, auditing can be performed based on success, failure, or both. For object access events, auditing can be further controlled based on user/group identify and access rights using System Access Control Lists (SACLs). SACLs are associated with objects and indicate whether or not auditing for a specific object, or object attribute, is enabled.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 91 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>14</sup> Windows will prevent a local administrator from disabling auditing for local administrator accounts. If an administrator can bypass auditing, they can avoid accountability for such actions as exfiltrating files without authorization.

The TSF is capable of generating the audit events associated with each audit category, as described in the Description column of **Table 6-2** (**Audit Event Categories**). The auditable events associated with each category capture the events listed in section **5.1.1.1**. For each category, the associated audit events (listed in **5.1.1.1**) for each of the requirements in the FAU\_GEN Required Events column of **Table 6-2** are captured.

**Table 6-2 Audit Event Categories** 

| Category                     | Description   | FAU_GEN Required Events   |
|------------------------------|---|---|
| System                       | Audit attempts that affect security of the entire system such as clearing the audit trail.  | FAU_STG.3, FCS_CKM.1*, FCS_CKM.4,<br>FCS_COP.1*, FCS_RBG_EXT.1, FPT_STM.1 |
| Object Access                | Audit attempts to access user objects, such as files.   | None for the MDF PP.  |
| Privilege Use                | Audits attempts to use security relevant privileges. Security relevant privileges are those privileges that are related to the TSFs and can be assigned in the evaluated configuration. | None for the MDF PP.  |
| Detailed Process<br>Tracking | Audit subject-tracking events, including program activation, handle duplication, indirect access to an object, and process exit.  | None for the MDF PP.  |
| Policy Change                | Audit attempts to change security policy settings such as the audit policy and privilege assignment.  | FAU_SEL.1   |
| Account<br>Management        | Audit attempts to create, delete, or change user or group accounts and changes to their attributes.   | FIA_AFL_EXT.1   |
| Directory Service Access     | Audit access to directory service objects and associated properties.  | None for the MDF PP.  |
| Logon                        | Audit attempts to logon or logoff the system, attempts to make a network connection.  | FIA_AFL_EXT.1, FIA_UAU_EXT.1, FIA_UID.1, FTA_SSL_EXT.1                    |
| Account Logon                | Audit when a DC receives a logon request.   | FIA_UAU.1(Logon), FIA_UID.1   |

## 6.2.1.2 Selective Audit

The authorized administrator has the ability to select events to be audited based upon object identity, user identity, computer (host identity), type (category), and outcome (success or failure) of the event. Selecting the set of events that will be audited can be on a per-machine basis by using tools such as auditpol.exe and wevtutil.exe, or using group policies to audit sets of machines (i.e. auditing based on the host identity).

Microsoft © 2015 Page 92 of 155

## 6.2.1.3 Audit Log Overflow Protection

The TSF protects against the loss of events through a combination of controls associated with audit queuing and event logging. As configured in the TOE, audit data is appended to the audit log until it is full. The TOE protects against lost audit data by allowing the authorized administrator to configure the system to generate an audit event when the security audit log reaches a specified capacity percentage (e.g., 90%). Additionally, the authorized administrator can configure the system not to overwrite events – overwriting the oldest stored audit records if the audit trail is full – and instead will shut down when the security audit log is full. When so configured, after the system shutdowns due to audit overflow, only the authorized administrator can restart the system to log on and manage the security log. When the security log is full, a message is written to the display indicating the audit log has overflowed.

As described above, the TSF collects security audit data in two ways, via the SRM and via the LSA server. Both components maintain audit in-memory event queues. The SRM puts audit records on an internal queue to be sent to the LSA server. The LSA maintains a second queue where it holds the audit data from SRM and the other services in the security process. Both audit queues detect when an audit event loss has occurred. The SRM service maintains a high water mark and a low water mark on its audit queue to determine when full. The LSA also maintains marks in its queue to indicate when it is full.

Windows also provides an eventing infrastructure that other system components can use to log events which are not managed by the SRM or the LSA. The maximum size for these administrative and operational event logs can either be limited to the maximum size for the log file (and then prevent generation of new audit events for that particular log) or overwrite the oldest audit event. The Windows security target selects the second option.

The audit logs which contain events relevant to the Mobile Device evaluation are:

- Security
- System
- CAPI2
- CertificateServicesClient-Lifecycle-User
- CertificateServicesClient-Lifecycle-System
- Wcmsvc
- SystemSettings
- Device Configuration
- Microsoft-Windows-AppXDeployment-Server/Operational

## 6.2.1.4 Audit Log Restricted Access Protection

The Windows Event Log service controls and protects the security audit log. Note that the underlying files are configured so that only the TSF can open the files and the Event Log service opens those files exclusively when it starts and keeps them open while it is running. To view the contents of the security audit log, the user must be an authorized administrator. The security audit log is a system resource, created during system startup. No interfaces exist to create, destroy, or modify an event within the event log. The LSA subsystem is the only service registered to enter events into the security log. The

Microsoft © 2015 Page 93 of 155

TOE only offers user interfaces to read and clear the security event log. In order to read the event log, the user must have a read ACE in the access control list for the **Event Log** service.

## **6.2.1.5 SFR Mapping**

The **Audit** function satisfies the following SFRs:

- **FAU\_GEN.1**: The TOE audit collection is capable of generating audit events for items identified in section **5.1.1.1**. For each audit event the TSF records the date, time, user Security Identifier (SID) or name, logon type (for logon audit records), event ID, source, type, and category.
- **FAU\_SEL.1**: The TSF provides the ability for the authorized administrator to select the events to be audited based upon object identity, user identity, workstation (host identity), event type, and success or failure of the event.
- **FAU\_STG\_EXT.1**: The interface to the logs are restricted to authorized administrators and does not allow for the modification of audit data within the audit log. The TOE can be configured such that when any event logs are full the system will overwrite the oldest events in each log type.

## 6.2.2 Cryptographic Support

## 6.2.2.1 Cryptographic Algorithms and Operations

Cryptography API: Next Generation (CNG) API is designed to be extensible at many levels and agnostic to cryptographic algorithm suites. An important feature of CNG is its native implementation of the Suite B algorithms, including algorithms for AES (128, 192, 256 key sizes), the SHA-1 and SHA-2 family (SHA-256, SHA-384 and SHA-512) of hashing algorithms, elliptic curve Diffie Hellman (ECDH), and elliptical curve DSA (ECDSA) over the NIST-standard prime curves P-256, P-384, and P-521.

Protocols such as the Internet Key Exchange (IKE), and Transport Layer Security (TLS), make use of elliptic curve Diffie-Hellman (ECDH) included in Suite B as well as hashing functions.

Deterministic random bit generation (DRBG) is implemented in accordance with NIST Special Publication 800-90. Windows generates random bits by taking the output of a cascade of two SP800-90 AES-256 counter mode based DRBGs in kernel-mode and four cascaded SP800-90 AES-256 DRBGs in user-mode; programmatic callers can choose to obtain either 128 or 256 bits from the RBG which is seeded from the Windows entropy pool. The entropy pool is populated using the following values:

- An initial entropy value from a seed file provided to the Windows OS Loader at boot time (512 bits of entropy).
- A calculated value based on the high-resolution CPU cycle counter which fires after every 1024 interrupts (a continuous source providing 16384 bits of entropy).
- Random values gathered periodically from the Trusted Platform Module (TPM), (320 bits of entropy on boot, 384 bits thereafter).

Microsoft © 2015 Page 94 of 155

\_

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>15</sup> The Windows OS Loader implements a SP 800-90 AES-CTR-DRBG and passes along 384 bits of entropy to the kernel for CNG to be use during initialization. This DBRG uses the same algorithms to obtain entropy from the CPU cycle counter, TPM, and RDRAND as described above.

 Random values gathered periodically by calling the RDRAND CPU instruction, (256 bits of entropy).

The main source of entropy in the system is the CPU cycle counter which tracks hardware interrupts. This is a sufficient health test; if the computer were not accumulating hardware and software interrupts it would not be running and therefore there would be no need for random bit generation. In the same manner, a failure of the TPM chip or processor would be a critical error that halts the computer. In addition, when the user chooses to follow the CC administrative guidance, which includes operating Windows in the FIPS validated mode, it will run FIPS 140 AES-256 Counter Mode DBRG Known Answer Tests (instantiate, generate) and Dual-EC DRBG Known Answer Tests (instantiate, generate) on start-up. Windows always runs the SP 800-90-mandated self-tests for AES-CTR-DRBG during a reseed and runs the Dual-EC reseed self-test when the user chooses to operate Windows in the FIPS validated mode. <sup>16</sup>

Each entropy source is independent of the other sources and does not depend on time. The CPU cycle counter inputs vary by environmental conditions such as data received on a network interface card, key presses on a keyboard, mouse movement and clicks, and touch input.

The TSF defends against tampering of the random number generation (RNG) / pseudorandom number generation (PRNG) sources by encapsulating its use in Kernel Security Device Driver. The interface for the Windows random number generator is BCryptGenRandom.

By default, the CNG provider for random number generation is the AES\_CTR\_DRBG, however CNG can be configured to use the Dual EC DRBG, which is no longer a FIPS approved algorithm. When Windows requires the use of a salt it uses the Windows RBG.

The encryption and decryption operations are performed by independent modules, known as Cryptographic Service Providers (CSPs). Windows generates symmetric keys (AES keys) using the FIPS Approved random number generator.

In addition to encryption and decryption services, the TSF provides other cryptographic operations such as hashing and digital signatures. Hashing is used by other FIPS Approved algorithms implemented in Windows (the hashed message authentication code, RSA, DSA, and EC DSA signature services, Diffie-Hellman and elliptic curve Diffie-Hellman key agreement, and the Dual EC random bit generator).

The hash-based message authentication code functions (HMAC) are based on SHA-1, SHA-256, SHA-384, and SHA-512, have the following characteristics:

**Table 6-3 HMAC Characteristics** 

| HMAC<br>Algorithm | Hash function<br>Used | Block Size | Output MAC<br>Length | Key Length / Key Size   |
|-------------------|-----------------------|------------|----------------------|---|
| HMAC-SHA-1        | SHA-1                 | 512 bits   | 20 bytes             | The key size is 10-63 bytes when the key size is less than the block size and the key size is 65 to 1024 bytes when |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>16</sup> Running Windows in FIPS validated mode is required according to the administrative guidance.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 95 of 155

|              |         |           |          | the key size is greater than the block size. The key size may also equal the block size. The key size is variable.  |
|--------------|---------|-----------|----------|---|
| HMAC-SHA-256 | SHA-256 | 512 bits  | 32 bytes | Same as HMAC-SHA-1  |
| HMAC-SHA-384 | SHA-384 | 1024 bits | 48 bytes | The key size is 24-127 bytes when the key size is less than the block size and the key size is 129-1024 bytes when the key size is greater than the block size. The key size may also equal the block size. The key size is variable. |
| HMAC-SHA-512 | SHA-512 | 1024 bits | 64 bytes | The key size is 32-127 bytes when the key size is less than the block size and the key size is 129-1024 bytes when the key size is greater than the block size. The key size may also equal the block size. The key size is variable. |

The HMAC function forms the basis for a FIPS Approved implementation of a password based key derivation function (PBKDF). Windows inputs the password as a text string without any optional padding or blocking into a HMAC 512 function. The hash functions supported by the Windows implementation of SP 800-132 are SHA-1, SHA-256, SHA-384 or SHA-512. The SHA-512 function is used by DPAPI (see **Protecting Data with DPAPI**).

**Table 6-4 Cryptographic Algorithm Standards and Evaluation Methods** 

| Cryptographic Operation                | Standard  | Evaluation Method                    |
|--|---|--------------------------------------|
| Encryption/Decryption                  | FIPS 197 AES<br>For ECB, CBC, CFB8, CCM,<br>and GCM modes | NIST CAVP #2848, #2832, #2853        |
| Digital signature                      | FIPS 186-4 rDSA   | NIST CAVP #1487, #1493, #1494, #1519 |
| Digital signature                      | FIPS 186-4 DSA  | NIST CAVP #855                       |
| Digital signature                      | FIPS 186-4 ECDSA  | NIST CAVP #505                       |
| Hashing                                | FIPS 180-3 SHA-2  | NIST CAVP #2373, #2396               |
| Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Code | FIPS 198-2 HMAC   | NIST CAVP #1773                      |
| Random number generation               | NIST SP 800-90 CTR_DRBG                                   | NIST CAVP #489 for CTR_DRBG          |
| Key agreement                          | NIST SP 800-56A ECDH                                      | NIST CAVP #47                        |
| IKEv1                                  | SP800-135   | NIST CVL #323                        |
| IKEv2                                  | SP800-135   | NIST CVL #323                        |
| TLS                                    | SP800-135   | NIST CVL #323                        |

The TSF includes a key isolation service designed specifically to host secret and private keys in a protected process to mitigate tampering or access to sensitive key materials. The TSF performs a key

Microsoft © 2015 Page 96 of 155

error detection check on each transfer of key (internal and intermediate transfers). The TSF prevents archiving of expired (private) signature keys. The TSF destroys non-persistent cryptographic keys. The TSF overwrites each intermediate storage area for plaintext key/critical cryptographic security parameter (i.e., any storage, such as memory buffers, that is included in the path of such data). This overwriting is performed as follows:

- For non-volatile memories other than EEPROM and Flash, the overwrite is executed three or more times using a different alternating data pattern each time upon the transfer of the key/critical cryptographic security parameter to another location.
- For volatile memory and non-volatile EEPROM and Flash memories, the overwrite is a single direct overwrite consisting of a pseudo random pattern, followed by a read-verify upon the transfer of the key/critical cryptographic security parameter to another location.

Windows uses FIPS Approved algorithms to establish Wi-Fi sessions and can be configured to use TLS and IPsec ciphersuites that solely use FIPS Approved algorithm primitives. The following table describes the keys and secrets used for IPsec, TLS, and Wi-Fi; when these ephemeral keys or secrets are no longer needed for a network session, they are deleted as described above and in section Error! Reference ource not found..

| Key                            | Description   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Symmetric                      | Keys used for AES (FIPS 197) encryption/decryption for IPsec ESP,       |
| encryption/decryption keys     | TLS, Wi-Fi.   |
| HMAC keys                      | Keys used for HMAC-SHA1, HMAC-SHA256, HMAC-SHA384, and                  |
|                                | HMAC-SHA512 (FIPS 198-1) as part of IPsec                               |
| Asymmetric ECDSA Public Keys   | Keys used for the verification of ECDSA digital signatures (FIPS 186-4) |
|                                | for IPsec traffic and peer authentication.                              |
| Asymmetric ECDSA Private Keys  | Keys used for the calculation of ECDSA digital signatures (FIPS 186-4)  |
|                                | for IPsec traffic and peer authentication.                              |
| Asymmetric RSA Public Keys     | Keys used for the verification of RSA digital signatures (FIPS 186-4)   |
|                                | for IPsec, TLS, Wi-Fi and signed product updates.                       |
| Asymmetric RSA Private Keys    | Keys used for the calculation of RSA digital signatures (FIPS 186-4)    |
|                                | for IPsec, TLS, and Wi-Fi.  |
| DH Private and Public values   | Private and public values used for Diffie-Hellman key establishment     |
|                                | for TLS.  |
| ECDH Private and Public values | Private and public values used for EC Diffie-Hellman key                |
|                                | establishment for TLS.  |

Table 6-5 Keys Used for IPsec, TLS, and Wi-Fi

## 6.2.2.2 Programming Interfaces

Modern Store Applications can use these interfaces to obtain random bits from the OS:

- CryptographicBuffer.GenerateRandom
- CryptographicBuffer.GenerateRandomNumber

Microsoft © 2015 Page 97 of 155

And can use these interfaces to obtain other cryptographic services from the OS:

- CryptographicEngine.Encrypt
- CryptographicEngine.Decrypt
- HashAlgorithmProvider.CreateHash
- HashAlgorithmProvider.HashData
- CryptographicEngine.Sign
- CryptographicEngine.VerifySignature
- KeyDerivationParameters.BuildForPbkdf2
- AsymmetricKeyAlgorithmProvider.CreateKeyPair
- <u>CryptographicEngine.Sign</u>
- CryptographicEngine.SignAsync
- <u>CryptographicEngine.SignHashedData</u>
- CryptographicEngine.SignHashedDataAsync
- CryptographicEngine.VerifySignature
- CryptographicEngine.VerifySignatureWithHashInput
- CryptographicEngine.Encrypt
- CryptographicEngine.Decrypt

## 6.2.2.3 Trusted Platform Module

Computers that incorporate a TPM have the ability to both create cryptographic keys within the TPM and protect data stored outside TPM so that the data can be decrypted only by the TPM internal keys. This process, often called "sealing" or "binding", can help protect the data from disclosure, but more importantly associates the key with the TPM. Each TPM contains a master "sealing" key, called the Storage Root Key (SRK), which was generated by the Storage Primary Seed (SPS). Like other cryptographic data within the TPM, the private portion of a key created in a TPM is never exposed to any other component, software, process, or user.

A TPM 2.0 protection profile written by the Trusted Computing Group provides additional detail about the SPS and the SRK: "The TPM holds the Storage Primary Seed (SPS) and generates Storage Root Keys (SRK) from SPS. The SRK are roots of Protected Storage Hierarchies associated with a TPM.<sup>17</sup> The storage keys in these hierarchies are used for symmetric encryption and signing of other keys and data together with their security attributes. The resulting encrypted file, which contains header information in addition to the data or the key, is called a BLOB (Binary Large Object) and is output by the TPM and can be loaded in the TPM when needed. The private keys generated on the TPM can be stored outside the TPM (encrypted) in a way that allows the TPM to use them later without ever exposing such keys in the clear outside the TPM. The TPM uses symmetric cryptographic algorithms to encrypt data and keys ...."<sup>18</sup>

The TPM also provides protections that prevent the export of TPM keys and cryptographic data, such as the SPS and SRK, and anti-hammering mechanisms to prevent guessing of a TPM password.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 98 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>17</sup> Windows creates only one protected storage hierarchy, and that is used by BitLocker.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>18</sup> Draft Protection Profile PC Client Specific TPM, FCS\_COP.1/AES, page 5.

## 6.2.2.4 Encrypting the Device with BitLocker

The BitLocker Data Encryption Key (DEK), also known as the Full Volume Encryption Key (FVEK), which encrypts the device's storage volume; the administrator can choose to use either a 128 bit or 256 FVEK, however the instruction in the administrative guidance is use a 256 bit FVEK. The Windows RBG generates the FVEK. The FVEK is ultimately protected by keys within the TPM, namely the Storage Root Key (SRK) and the Storage Primary Seed, the latter is the Root Encryption Key (REK) and is generated by the TPM RBG during initialization. The REK will have "at least twice the number of bits as the security strength of any symmetric or asymmetric algorithm implemented on the TPM", <sup>19</sup> and because a minimal TPM 2.0 implementation is guaranteed to have AES-128, <sup>20</sup> the REK security strength is at least 256 bits. During initialization, the TPM also generates the 2048-bit RSA key pair that is used as the SRK; sealing operations by the SRK in turn protects the BitLocker intermediate keys which are used by Windows when Windows boots (or resumes from hibernation) and so the REK is isolated from operating system and applications, thus preventing reading and exporting the plaintext representation of the REK.

The key hierarchy for BitLocker shows an AES 256 CCM is used to encrypt the Volume Master Key (VMK), which is a KEK and the Full Volume Encryption Key (FVEK), which is a DEK. The FVEK encrypts disk blocks using AES CBC.

The other KEKs are always 256 bits, and so their key size will always the same or larger than the FVEK.

When a user turns on the device, the primary (system) partition is the first data partition that will be unlocked by BitLocker. The Windows OS Loader will prompt the user for the Enhanced PIN which is used to generate a set of intermediate keys, one of which is sealed by the TPM; the ultimate result is a key which decrypts the encrypted VMK, which in turn decrypts the encrypted FVEK, thus enabling the Windows Loader to read the Windows kernel, ntoskrnl.exe, and then transfer execution to the kernel.

The FVEK, VMK, and intermediate keys are all generated by the Windows RBG, , or by combining intermediate keys as described in FCS\_CKM\_EXT.3.

The unencrypted VMKs are zeroized after they are (1) used to encrypt the FVEK and (2) encrypted by an intermediate key. The other keys are also zeroized from volatile memory in the process of generating the VMK. When Windows shuts down normally or goes into hibernation, Windows will zeroize the FVEK as part of shutdown. In the event of a system crash, the BitLocker Crash Dump Filter will zeroize the FVEK in order to prevent the FVEK from being included in the crash dump file.

## **6.2.2.5** *Key Storage*

The Key Isolation Service in Windows hosts secret and private keys within a protected process in order to mitigate tampering or access to sensitive key materials, which can be private keys, secret keys, or other secret material that need to be persisted. The NTFS files that the Key Isolation Service uses to store keys are protected by the Discretionary Access Control security policy described in the <u>Windows 8</u>,

Microsoft © 2015 Page 99 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>19</sup> <u>Trusted Platform Module Library, Part 1: Architecture</u>, Section 14.3.1, page 74.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>20</sup> Draft <u>Protection Profile PC Client Specific TPM</u>, FCS\_COP.1/AES, page 42.

<u>Server 2012 Security Target</u>. In the NTFS file the key data is further is protected by the Data Protection API (DPAPI), which is described further below. The NTFS files are stored in NTFS volumes which is protected by BitLocker full disk encryption. Please see **Data at Rest Protection** for more information on BitLocker full disk encryption.

The IT administrator can configure Certificate Profiles in a Mobile Device Management (MDM) server for importing keys to the enrolled Windows devices. Applications import keys/secrets into the secure key storage by using the <a href="Maintenanger.lmportPfxDataAsync">CertificateEnrollmentManager.lmportPfxDataAsync</a> API. In addition, on Windows 8.1 devices users and local administrators can use the Certificate MMC Snap-in to import keys from Personal Information Exchange (.pfx) files into the secure key storage.

Private keys are protected on disk using DPAPI and BitLocker encryption and access is restricted using the Windows Discretionary Access Control Policy. When a Windows Store Application is deleted the local private keys imported by that app are deleted. All private keys are destroyed when a wipe operation is performed on a device. Local administrators can also perform a wipe on their Windows device to destroy all the keys or secrets. The IT administrator can perform a wipe operation of the enrolled device to destroy the keys.

Windows can restrict access to the application imported key/secret in secure key storage to only the application that imported the key or secret by using the subject identity for the Discretionary Access Control security policy as described in the <u>Windows 8 Server 2012 Security Target</u>. Users and local administrators authorize applications at installation to access shared keys or secrets when an application declares the **sharedUserCertificates** capability to share the certificate with other Windows Store Applications for the user. The **sharedUserCertificates** capability is described further in **Restricting Access to System Services**.

Destruction of keys/secrets imported into the secure key storage by applications is conducted automatically by the modern application environment after the keys/secrets are no longer in use.

For the purposes of this Mobile Device evaluation, the cryptographic module is the combination of the operating system and the device running Windows. After the device is configured the only persisted keys which protect user data via BitLocker are the Storage Root Key held by the TPM (the REK), the encrypted VMK (a KEK), and the encrypted FVEK (the DEK). When the device is turned on, the TPM checks the integrity of the SRK as described above, and then the Windows OS Loader unwraps the VMK and FVEK after the user provides the correct authorization factors. When a user provides their password during interactive logon, Windows will use the submask derived from the password to provide access to private keys and secrets protected by DPAPI.

No unencrypted BitLocker key material is transmitted outside the cryptographic module. The encrypted FVEK, VMK, and Intermediate Key are stored on disk as metadata on the storage volume, however the metadata is stored outside of the mounted NTFS volume and so these are never transmitted outside the device, which the boundary of the cryptographic module in this evaluation.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 100 of 155

## 6.2.2.6 Protecting Data with DPAPI

The Windows RBG generates a DPAPI Master Secret which is used as input into an AES function along with an initialization vector and encryption key, both of which are based on the user's password, to generate the encrypted DPAPI Master Secret. The DPAPI Master Secret is a kind of DEK and the password-based encryption key, which protects the DPAPI Master Secret is a kind of KEK. Also note that the DPAPI Master Secret is ultimately protected by the REK. The password encryption key is generated from a PBKDF2 function takes a result of a one-way function computation of the user's password.<sup>21</sup>

Windows will also combine the DPAPI Master Secret along with a salt value which will be used as an encryption key to protect user data, such as a private key. Each user will have a separate encryption key.

The integrity of both the encrypted DPAPI Master Secret and the encryption key is ensured by calculating MAC values.

## 6.2.2.7 Networking

Windows has a native implementation of IEEE 802.11-2012 to provide secure wireless local area networking (Wi-Fi). Windows uses PRF-384 in WPA2 Wi-Fi sessions and generates AES 128-bit keys using the Windows RBG. Windows complies with the IEEE 802.11-2012 standard and interoperates with other devices that implement the standard. TOE devices have received WPA2 certification, both Enterprise and Personal, and Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Interoperability Certificates from the Wi-Fi Alliance:

Surface Pro 3 (the <u>Marvell 8897</u> adapter is certified)

Windows implements key wrapping and unwrapping according to the NIST SP 800-38F specification (the "KW" mode) and so unwraps the Wi-Fi Group Temporal Key (GTK) which was sent by the access point. Because the GTK was protected by AES Key Wrap when it was delivered in an EAPOL-Key frame, the GTK is not exposed to the network.

## 6.2.2.8 Network Protocols

### 6.2.2.8.1 TLS and EAP TLS

Windows 8.1 implements TLS to enable a trusted network path that is used for both EAP, for client and server authentication, as well as HTTPS/ HTTP/TLS.

The following table summarizes the TLS RFCs implemented in Windows:

**Table 6-6 TLS RFCs Implemented by Windows** 

| RFC# | Name                                      | How Used                            |
|------|---|-------------------------------------|
| 2246 | The TLS Protocol Version 1.0              | Specifies requirements for TLS 1.0. |
| 3268 | Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)        | Specifies additional ciphersuites   |
|      | Ciphersuites for Transport Layer Security | implemented by Windows.             |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>21</sup> Note that data protected by DPAPI is also encrypted by BitLocker when the data is persisted to disk, and so the AES256 encrypted data will be encrypted a second time using the BitLocker 128-bit or 256-bit FVEK.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 101 of 155

|      | (TLS)  |  |
|------|--|--|
| 3546 | Transport Layer Security (TLS) Extensions  | Updates RFC 2246 with TLS 1.0 extensions implemented by Windows.               |
| 4346 | <u>The Transport Layer Security (TLS)</u> <u>Protocol Version 1.1</u>                      | Specifies requirements for TLS 1.0.  |
| 4366 | Transport Layer Security (TLS) Extensions  | Obsoletes RFC 3546 Requirements for TLS 1.0 extensions implemented by Windows. |
| 4492 | Elliptic Curve Cryptography (ECC) Cipher<br>Suites for Transport Layer Security (TLS)      | Specifies additional ciphersuites implemented by Windows.                      |
| 4681 | TLS User Mapping Extension   | Extends TLS to include a User Principal Name during the TLS handshake.         |
| 5246 | The Transport Layer Security (TLS) Protocol Version 1.2                                    | Oboletes RFCs 3268, 4346, and 4366.<br>Specifies requirements for TLS 1.2.     |
| 5289 | TLS Elliptic Curve Cipher Suites with SHA-<br>256/384 and AES Galois Counter Mode<br>(GCM) | Specifies additional ciphersuites implemented by Windows.                      |
| SSL3 | The SSL Protocol Version 3   | Specifies requirements for SSL3.   |

Exceptions from the protocols are described in these documents:

- MS-TLSP Transport Layer Security (TLS) Profile.docx
- RFC 2246 The TLS Protocol Version 1.0.docx
- RFC 3268 AES Ciphersuites for TLS.docx
- RFC 3546 Transport Layer Security (TLS) Extensions.docx
- RFC 4366 Transport Layer Security (TLS) Extensions.docx
- RFC 4492 ECC Cipher Suites for TLS.docx
- RFC 4681 TLS User Mapping Extension.docx
- RFC 5246 The Transport Layer Security (TLS) Protocol, Version 1.2.docx
- RFC 5289 TLS ECC Suites with SHA-256384 and AES GCM.docx
- Internet Draft SSL3 SSL 3.0 Specification.docx

The <u>Cipher Suites in Schannel</u> article describes the complete set of TLS cipher suites implemented in Windows (reference: <a href="http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa374757(v=vs.85).aspx">http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa374757(v=vs.85).aspx</a>), of which the following are used in the evaluated configuration:

- TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_CBC\_SHA
- TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_256\_CBC\_SHA
- TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_CBC\_SHA256 as defined in RFC 5246
- TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_AES\_256\_CBC\_SHA256 as defined in RFC 5246
- TLS ECDHE ECDSA WITH AES 128 GCM SHA256 as defined in RFC 5289
- TLS\_ECDHE\_ECDSA\_WITH\_AES\_256\_GCM\_SHA384 as defined in RFC 5289
- TLS\_ECDHE\_ECDSA\_WITH\_AES\_128\_CBC\_SHA256 as defined in RFC 6460

Microsoft © 2015 Page 102 of 155

TLS\_ECDHE\_ECDSA\_WITH\_AES\_256\_CBC\_SHA384 as defined in RFC 6460.

Each Windows component that uses TLS checks that the identifying information in the certificate matches what is expected, the component should reject the connection, these checks include checking the expected Distinguished Name (DN), Subject Name (SN), or Subject Alternative Name (SAN) attributes along with the applicable extended key usages. The DN, and any Subject Alternative Name, in the certificate is checked against the identity of the remote computer's DNS entry or IP address to ensure that it matches as described at <a href="http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc783349">http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc783349</a>(v=WS.10).aspx, and in particular the "Server Certificate Message" section.

Windows implements HTTPS as described in RFC 2818 so that Windows Store and system applications executing on the TOE can securely connect to external servers using HTTPS.

## 6.2.2.8.2 IPsec

The Windows IPsec implementation conforms to RFC 4301, Security Architecture for the Internet Protocol. This is documented publicly in the Windows protocol documentation at section 7.5.1 IPsec Overview. Windows implements both RFCS 2409, Internet Key Exchange (IKEv1), and RFC 4306, Internet Key Exchange version 2, (IKEv2). User-mode applications, which include Windows Store Applications, can transparently use IPsec networking services; networking traffic is isolated to the Windows kernel and the IPsec, IPsec Policy Agent, and IKE and AuthIP Keying Module user-mode service processes.

Section 6.2.3.4 VPN Client for the description of which network traffic is not routed through the VPN.

## **6.2.2.9 SFR Mapping**

The **Cryptographic Support** function satisfies the following SFRs:

- FCS\_CKM.1(ASYM KA), FCS\_CKM.1(ASYM AU): See Table 6-4 Cryptographic Algorithm Standards and Evaluation Methods.
- FCS\_CKM.1(WLAN), FCS\_CKM.2: Windows has a native implementation of IEEE 802.11.
- **FCS\_CKM\_EXT.1**: The Windows devices in this evaluation use a root key of trust which prevents exporting or tampering the REK.
- FCS\_CKM\_EXT.2(128), FCS\_CKM\_EXT.2(256): All data encrypting keys are generated by the Windows RBG, which has an input of at least 256 bits of entropy; the Windows 8.1 data encrypting key is 256 bits in the evaluated configuration.
- **FCS\_CKM\_EXT.3**: Key encrypting keys have a security strength of 256 bits which is as strong as the 256 bit disk encrypting key.
- **FCS\_CKM\_EXT.4**: Windows overwrites critical cryptographic parameters immediately after that data is no longer needed.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 103 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>22</sup> Also available as [MS-WSO], Windows System Overview, page 43 for offline reading.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>23</sup> [MS-IKEE], Internet Key Exchange Protocol Extensions, page 8.

- FCS\_CKM\_EXT.5: Windows will delete the authorization factor to prevent access to protected data; after a wipe command Windows will format the user data partition to prevent access to protected data.
- **FCS\_CKM\_EXT.6**: When Windows needs to generate a salt, it uses the Windows random bit generator
- FCS\_COP.1(SYM): See Table 6-4 Cryptographic Algorithm Standards and Evaluation Methods.
- FCS\_COP.1(HASH): See Table 6-4 Cryptographic Algorithm Standards and Evaluation Methods.
- FCS COP.1(SIGN): See Table 6-4 Cryptographic Algorithm Standards and Evaluation Methods.
- FCS\_COP.1(HMAC): See Table 6-4 Cryptographic Algorithm Standards and Evaluation Methods.
- FCS\_COP.1(PBKD): Windows implements a FIPS Approved implementation of NIST SP 800-132.
- **FCS\_IV\_EXT.1**: When it is necessary to generate initialization vectors, Windows follows the guidance in Table 11: References and IV Requirements for NIST-approved Cipher Modes.
- FCS\_RBG\_EXT.1: See Table 6-4 Cryptographic Algorithm Standards and Evaluation Methods.
- FCS\_SRV\_EXT.1: See Section 6.2.2.2 Programming Interfaces.
- **FCS\_STG\_EXT.1**: Windows provides secure key storage for private (asymmetric) keys, secret (symmetric) keys, and other data deemed by an authorized subject to require secure storage.
- **FCS\_STG\_EXT.2**: All keys in Windows are ultimately protected by the TPM-based root of trust for the devices included in this evaluation.
- FCS\_STG\_EXT.3: Key encrypting keys are protected by AES- MAC (CCM) mode.
- FCS\_TLS\_EXT.1, FCS\_TLS\_EXT.2, FCS\_HTTPS\_EXT.1: Windows implements TLS 1.0, 1.1, and 1.2 to provide confidentiality and integrity to upper-layer protocols such as Extensible Authentication Protocol and HTTP.

## 6.2.3 User Data Protection

## 6.2.3.1 Restricting Access to System Services

Windows Store Apps that need programmatic access resources such as device peripherals must declare the capabilities they require as part of the package manifest for the application.<sup>24</sup> There are two types of capabilities, the first is for developers who are registered as having individual accounts in the Windows Store; the second kind is for developers who are registered as having company accounts in the Windows Store. Applications from developers that are registered as companies can have additional capabilities.

The general-use capabilities that apply to most application scenarios are:

**Table 6-7 General Use Capabilities** 

| Capability | Description   |
|------------|---|
| Music      | The musicLibrary capability provides programmatic access to the         |
|            | user's Music, allowing the app to enumerate and access all files in the |
|            | library without user interaction. This capability is typically used in  |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>24</sup> This section is based on http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/apps/hh464936.aspx.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 104 of 155

|  | Takan da sa                            |
|--|--|
|  | jukebox apps that need to access the entire Music library.                 |
| Pictures                                 | The <b>picturesLibrary</b> capability provides programmatic access to the  |
|  | user's Pictures, allowing the app to enumerate and access all files in     |
|  | the library without user interaction. This capability is typically used in |
|  | photo playback apps that need to access the entire Pictures library.       |
| Videos                                   | The videosLibrary capability provides programmatic access to the           |
|  | user's Videos, allowing the app to enumerate and access all files in       |
|  | the library without user interaction. This capability is typically used in |
|  | movie playback apps that need access to the entire Videos library.         |
| Removable Storage                        | The removableStorage capability provides programmatic access to            |
|  | files on removable storage, such as USB keys and external hard drives,     |
|  | filtered to the file type associations declared in the package manifest.   |
|  | For example, if a DOC reader app declared a .doc file type association,    |
|  | it can open .doc files on the removable storage device, but not other      |
|  | types of files.  |
| internetClient                           | Can receive incoming data from the internet. Cannot act as a server.       |
|  | No local network access. <sup>25</sup>                                     |
| internetClientClientServer <sup>26</sup> | Can receive incoming data from the internet. Can act as a server. No       |
|  | local network access.  |
| Home and work networks                   | The privateNetworkClientServer capability provides inbound and             |
|  | outbound access to home and work networks through the firewall.            |
|  | This capability is typically used for games that communicate across        |
|  | the local area network (LAN), and for apps that share data across a        |
|  | variety of local devices.  |
|  | On Windows, this capability does not provide access to the internet.       |
| Appointments                             | The appointments capability provides access to the user's                  |
|  | appointment store. This capability allows read access to                   |
|  | appointments obtained from the synced network accounts and to              |
|  | other apps that write to the appointment store.                            |
| Contacts                                 | The contacts capability provides access to the aggregated view of the      |
|  | contacts from various contacts stores. This capability gives the app       |
|  | limited access (network permitting rules apply) to contacts that were      |
|  | synced from various networks and the local contact store.                  |

Device capabilities allow the Windows Store App to access peripheral and internal devices. Device capabilities are specified with the **DeviceCapability** element in the app package manifest.

**Table 6-8 Device Capabilities** 

| Capability | Description |
|------------|-------------|
|            |             |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>25</sup> This a "least privilege" security measure because many Windows Store Applications need only to receive or send data to remote web services (e.g., social network sites or weather apps) and not communicate with other hosts on the local network.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 105 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>26</sup> Most Windows Store Apps that have a web service component will use **internetClient**. Apps that enable peer-to-peer (P2P) scenarios where the app needs to listen for incoming network connections should use **internetClientServer**.

| Location                     | The <b>location</b> capability provides access to location functionality, which you get from dedicated hardware like a GPS sensor in the PC or is derived from available network info. Apps must handle the case where the user has disabled location services from the <b>Settings</b> charm. <sup>27</sup>   |
|------------------------------|--|
| Microphone                   | The <b>microphone</b> capability provides access to the microphone's audio feed, which allows the app to record audio from connected microphones. Apps must handle the case where the user has disabled the microphone from the <b>Settings</b> charm.   |
| Proximity                    | The <b>proximity</b> capability enables multiple devices in close proximity to communicate with one another. This capability is typically used in casual multi-player games and in apps that exchange information. Devices attempt to use the communication technology that provides the best possible connection, including Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and the internet. This capability is used only to initiate communication between the devices. |
| Webcam                       | The <b>webcam</b> capability provides access to the video feed of a built-in camera or external webcam, which allows the app to capture photos and videos. On Windows, apps must handle the case where the user has disabled the camera from the <b>Settings</b> charm.  |
| USB                          | The <b>usb</b> device capability enables access to APIs in the <b>Windows.Devices.Usb</b> namespace.   |
| Human interface device (HID) | The <b>humaninterfacedevice</b> device capability enables access to APIs in the <b>Windows.Devices.HumanInterfaceDevice</b> namespace. This namespace enables the Windows Store App to access devices that support the Human Interface Device (HID) protocol.  |
| Bluetooth GATT               | The <b>bluetooth.genericAttributeProfile</b> device capability enables access to APIs in the Windows.Devices.Bluetooth.GenericAttributeProfile namespace. This namespace enables the Windows Store App to access Bluetooth LE devices through a collection of primary services, included services, characteristics, and descriptors.   |
| Bluetooth RFCOMM             | The <b>bluetooth.rfcomm</b> device capability enables access to APIs in the <b>Windows.Devices.Bluetooth.Rfcomm</b> namespace. This namespace supports the Basic Rate/Extended Data Rate (BR/EDR) transport and also enables the Windows Store App to access a device that implements Serial Port Profile (SPP).   |

The additional capabilities associated with Windows Store Applications which are from company accounts are highly restricted and require additional review before the App is published to the Windows Store.

**Table 6-9 Special Use Capabilities** 

Microsoft © 2015 Page 106 of 155

 $<sup>^{27}</sup>$  A charm is an admin tool available by opening the Windows Settings page by swiping from the left side of the screen.

| Capability                | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| Enterprise authentication | Windows domain credentials, which are domain username and password for a particular user, enable the user to log into remote resources using their credentials, and act as if a user provided their user name and password. The <b>enterpriseAuthentication</b> capability is typically used in line-of-business apps that connect to servers within an enterprise and is not needed for basic communications over the Internet.  The Enterprise Authentication capability allows a Windows Store App to use the Credential Manager when prompted for domain credentials. |
| Shared User Certificates  | The <b>sharedUserCertificates</b> capability enables a Windows Store Application to access software and hardware certificates, such as certificates stored on a smart card, the certificate is stored in the user's DPAPI profile location instead of the DPAPI profile associated with the Windows Store Application   |
| Documents                 | The <b>documentsLibrary</b> capability provides programmatic access to the user's Documents, filtered to the file type associations declared in the package manifest, to support offline access to OneDrive. For example, if a DOC reader app declared a .doc file type association, it can open .doc files in Documents, but not other types of files.   |

As part of installing a Windows Store Application, the user is prompted to authorize the use of the capability by the App, after the App has been installed is it allowed to access the capability when running on behalf of the user. When an App requests to access a resource that is managed by a capability, the Windows App Container, checks if the App has been authorized access, according to the installed package manifest, and then provides mediated access to the resource. In addition to the application-level isolation, Windows also restricts access to hardware resources through the discretionary access control security policy and kernel-mode / user-mode architecture described in the *Windows 8 Server 2012 Security Target*.

## 6.2.3.2 Data at Rest Protection

The entire storage volume is protected by BitLocker full disk encryption, this includes user data, Windows configuration (TSF) data, and all programs other than the BitLocker programs needed to unlock the drive. BitLocker in Windows 8 was evaluated against the NIAP Software Full Disk Encryption Protection Profile (certificate # 10540) using AES CBC mode with an administrator-specified 128- or 256-bit blocks for Windows 8.1. The administrative guidance recommends using AES 256.

When the local administrator decides to wipe the device, or the IT administrator decides to wipe the device using a MDM, Windows will delete the BitLocker metadata, which includes the authorization factors that unlock the device. Without the BitLocker metadata, the encrypted data on the storage volume is effectively wiped. The wiping of the BitLocker metadata from flash memory on Windows 8.1 is performed by first overwriting the metadata with zeros, then overwriting the data with ones and finally overwriting the data with random bytes, each step is followed by a read-verify. After deleting the

Microsoft © 2015 Page 107 of 155

metadata, Windows will reboot and install a fresh copy of the operating system from a recovery partition.

## 6.2.3.3 Certificate Storage

The MDF PP defines the *Trust Anchor Database* as "[a] list of trusted root Certificate Authority certificates". In a Windows OS, these certificates are known as *trusted root certificates*, which are contained in certificate stores. Each user has their own certificate store and there is a certificate store for the computer account; access to a certificate store is managed by the discretionary access control policy in Windows such that only the authorized administrator, i.e., the user or the local administrator, can add or remove entries.<sup>28</sup> Certificates which are used by applications, for example, IPsec and TLS, are also placed in certificate stores for the user.

In addition to the standard certificate revocation processes, application certificates can be loaded by either using administrative tools such as **certutil.exe**, changes to the trusted root certificates can be made using Certificate Trust Lists.

#### 6.2.3.4 **VPN Client**

The Windows IPsec VPN client can be configured by the device local administrator or the MDM IT administrator, when the device is enrolled. The administrator can also configure the IPsec VPN client that all IP traffic is routed through the IPsec tunnel except for:

- IKE traffic used to establish the VPN tunnel
- IPv4 ARP traffic for resolution of local network layer addresses and to establish a local address
- IPv6 NDP traffic for resolution of local network layer addresses and to establish a local address

The IPsec VPN is an end-to-end internetworking technology and so VPN sessions can be established over physical network protocols such as wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) or local area network.

The components responsible for routing IP traffic through the VPN client:

- The IPv4 / IPv6 network stack in the kernel processes ingoing and outgoing network traffic.
- The **IPsec** and **IKE and AuthIP Keying Modules** service which hosts the IKE and Authenticated Internet Protocol (AuthIP) keying modules. These keying modules are used for authentication and key exchange in Internet Protocol security (IPsec).
- The Remote Access Service device driver in the kernel, which is used primarily for VPN connections; known as the "RAS IPsec VPN" or "RAS VPN".
- The IPsec Policy Agent service which enforces IPsec policies.

## **6.2.3.5 SFR Mapping**

The **User Data Protection** function satisfies the following SFRs:

Microsoft © 2015 Page 108 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>28</sup> Refer to the Windows 8 Operating System Protection Profile evaluation for more information about the discretionary access control policy.

- **FDP\_ACF\_EXT.1**: Through the use of capabilities that Windows Store Applications request during installation, Windows restricts system services to Apps.
- FDP\_DAR\_EXT.1: All user data and all Windows data is encrypted on the device.
- FDP\_STG\_EXT.1: Windows provides a trusted and secure store for certificates.
- **FDP IFC EXT.1**: Windows provides a VPN Client.

#### **6.2.4** Identification and Authentication

All logons are treated essentially in the same manner regardless of their source (e.g., interactive logon, network interface, internally initiated service logon) and start with an account name, domain name (which may be NULL; indicating the local system), and credentials that must be provided to the TSF.

The Local Security Authority component within Windows maintains a count of the consecutive failed logon attempts by security principals from their last successful authentication. When the number of consecutive failed logon attempts is larger than the policy for failed logon attempts, which ranges from 0 (never lockout the account) to 999, Windows 8.1 will lockout the user account. Interactive logons are done on the secure desktop, which does not allow other programs to run, and therefore prevents automated password guessing. In addition, the Windows logon component enforces a one second delay between every failed logon with an increased delay after several consecutive logon failures.

The Windows implementation of Bluetooth follows the Bluetooth SIG Specification, including OBEX data transfer and OPP (object push profile). The OBEX specification, which Windows implements, prevents any transfer of user data until both Bluetooth devices have paired. When a Windows OS encounters an unpaired device, it does not transfer any data to the unpaired device.

#### 6.2.4.1 Protecting User Data

Windows protects user data with BitLocker, which encrypts the entire device; the user's persistent keys and secrets additionally protected by DPAPI. At the most basic level, all data on stored on the device is encrypted by BitLocker using FIPS Approved symmetric encryption algorithms. During boot, Windows will derive disk encryption keys (DEK) and key encryption keys (KEK) based on the BitLocker authorization factors that unlock the device; the administrative guidance for Windows 8.1 includes the configuration for an additional BitLocker authorization factors which is a device password, technically known as the "Enhanced PIN", that includes uppercase and lowercase English letters, symbols on an EN-US keyboard, numbers, special characters and spaces. The system and user (protected) data remains encrypted in non-volatile storage, the file system device driver uses the BitLocker FVEK (a DEK) to decrypt the data as it is loaded into volatile storage. The only time user (protected) data is decrypted is after the user authenticates by providing their Enhanced PIN password. The logon password is used to derive the DPAPI secret (a KEK) which provides an additional layer of protection for certain user data, including keys.

#### 6.2.4.2 X.509 Certificate Validation

Each Windows component that uses X.509 certificates is responsible for performing certificate validation, however all components use a common subcomponent, which validates certificates as described in RFC 5280 including all applicable usage constraints such as Server Authentication for

Microsoft © 2015 Page 109 of 155

networking sessions and Code Signing when installing product updates. Each component that uses X.509 certificates will have a repository for public certificates and will select a certificate based on criteria such as entity name for the communication partner, any extended key usage constraints, and cryptographic algorithms associated with the certificate.

If certificate validation fails, or if Windows is not able to check the validation status for a certificate, Windows will not establish a trusted network channel (IPsec, TLS), however it will inform the user and seek their consent before establishing a HTTPS web browsing session. Certification validation for software installation and updates is described in section **6.2.6.6**.

Modern Store Applications can use these interfaces to check the validity of certificates:

- Certificate.BuildChainAsync
- CertificateChain. Validate

#### **6.2.4.3 SFR Mapping**

- **FIA\_AFL\_EXT.1**: After the number of consecutive failed authentication attempts for a user account has been surpassed, Windows 8.1 and will lock out the user account.
- **FIA\_BLT\_EXT.1**: Windows require Bluetooth mutual authentication between the Windows device any the remote device prior to any data transfer over the Bluetooth connection.
- **FIA\_PAE\_EXT.1**: Windows conforms to IEEE 802.1X as a Port Access Entity acting in the Supplicant role.
- **FIA\_PMG\_EXT.1**: Windows devices support logon passwords at least 15 characters in length. Windows 8.1 logon passwords can be composed from uppercase characters, lowercase characters, digits, and special characters to be used in passwords.
- **FIA\_TRT\_EXT.1**: Windows logon component enforces a one second delay between every failed logon.
- **FIA\_UAU.7**: During an interactive logon, Windows echoes the users password with "\*" characters to prevent disclosure of the user's password.
- **FIA\_UAU\_EXT.1**: The user must authenticate successfully during interactive logon and prior to decryption of any user data stored on the device.
- **FIA\_UAU\_EXT.2**: The only actions that an unauthorized user can take when a Windows device is locked is to bring up the authentication dialog or turn the device off.
- **FIA\_UAU\_EXT.3**: Windows requires that a user provide the correct password prior to changing their password and when unlocking their device.
- **FIA\_X509\_EXT.1, FIA\_X509\_EXT.3**: Windows validates X.509 certificates according to RFC 5280 and provides OCSP and CRL services for applications to check certificate revocation status.
- **FIA\_X509\_EXT.2**: Windows uses X.509 certificates for EAP-TLS exchanges, TLS, HTTPS, IPsec, code signing for system software updates, code signing for mobile applications, and code signing for integrity verification.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 110 of 155

#### **6.2.5** Security Management

The complete set of management functions are described in Security Management (FMT), the following table maps which activities can be done by the device user (who is considered to be a standard user in a Windows client OS), the device administrator (who is considered to be a local administrator), and invoked by a mobile device manager. A person who uses a Windows 8.1 device may either be a standard user or a local administrator depending on the kind of user account created for the person. In the terminology of the MDF PP, the device user and (device) local administrator correspond to the FMT\_MOF.1(USER) requirement and the MDM Agent corresponds to the FMT\_MOF.1(ORG) requirement because the latter refers to management capabilities after a device has been enrolled into a MDM.

**Table 6-10 Mobile Device Management Capabilities** 

| Activity  | Device User | Device (Local)<br>Administrator | MDM Agent |
|---|-------------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| Configure password policy   |             | V                               |           |
| Configure session locking policy  |             | ٧                               |           |
| Enable/disable the VPN protection                                       | ٧           | ٧                               |           |
| Enable/disable Wi-Fi,<br>Bluetooth                                      | ٧           | ٧                               | ٧         |
| Enable/disable camera, microphone                                       | ٧           | ٧                               |           |
| Specify wireless<br>networks (SSIDs) to<br>which the TSF may<br>connect |             |                                 | ٧         |
| Configure security policy for connecting to wireless networks           |             |                                 | ٧         |
| Transition to the locked state  | ٧           | ٧                               |           |
| Full wipe of protected data   |             | ٧                               |           |
| Configure application installation policy                               |             |                                 | ٧         |
| Import keys/secrets into the secure key storage                         | ٧           | ٧                               |           |
| Destroy imported keys/secrets and any other keys/secrets in             |             | ٧                               |           |
| the secure key storage<br>Import X.509v3                                |             |                                 | ٧         |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 111 of 155

| Activity                  | Device User | Device (Local) Administrator | MDM Agent |
|---------------------------|-------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| certificates into the     |             |                              |           |
| Trust Anchor Database     |             |                              |           |
| Remove imported           |             |                              | <b>V</b>  |
| X.509v3 certificates      |             |                              | V         |
| and any other X.509v3     |             |                              |           |
| certificates in the Trust |             |                              |           |
| Anchor Database           |             |                              |           |
| Enroll the TOE in         | ٧           | ٧                            |           |
| management                | V           | V                            |           |
| Remove applications       |             |                              | V         |
| Update system             |             |                              | <b>√</b>  |
| software                  |             |                              | <u> </u>  |
| Install applications      |             |                              | V         |
| Enable/disable data       |             | ٧                            |           |
| transfer capabilities     |             | V                            |           |
| over USB port for         |             |                              |           |
| Windows 8.1,              |             |                              |           |
| Bluetooth                 |             |                              |           |
| Enable/disable wireless   | ٧           | ٧                            |           |
| remote access             | V           | V                            |           |
| connections except for    |             |                              |           |
| personal Hotspot          |             |                              |           |
| service, personal         |             |                              |           |
| Hotspot connections,      |             |                              |           |
| tethered connections      |             |                              |           |
| Enable data-at rest       |             | ٧                            |           |
| protection                |             | V                            |           |
| Enable removable          | V           | ٧                            |           |
| media's data-at-rest      | V           | V                            |           |
| protection                |             |                              |           |
| Configure the Access      | ٧           | ٧                            |           |
| Point Name and proxy      | V           | V                            |           |
| used for                  |             |                              |           |
| communications            |             |                              |           |
| between the cellular      |             |                              |           |
| network and other         |             |                              |           |
| networks                  |             |                              |           |
| Enable/disable display    | ٧           | V                            |           |
| notification in the       | V           | V                            |           |
| locked state              |             |                              |           |
| Wipe sensitive data       |             | ٧                            |           |
| Alert the administrator   |             | •                            | ٧         |
|                           |             |                              | V         |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 112 of 155

| Activity  | Device User | Device (Local)<br>Administrator | MDM Agent |
|---|-------------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| Remove Enterprise applications  |             |                                 | ٧         |
| Approve import and removal by applications of X.509v3 certificates in the Trust Anchor Database | ٧           | V                               |           |
| Configure the unlock banner   |             | ٧                               |           |
| Enable/disable location services  | ٧           | ٧                               |           |

#### **6.2.5.1 SFR Mapping**

The **Security Management** function satisfies the following SFRs:

- **FMT\_MOF.1(USER)**: Windows provides the user with the capability to administer the security functions described in the security target. The mappings to specific functions are described in each applicable section of the TOE Summary Specification.
- FMT\_MOF.1(ORG): Windows provides the authorized administrator with the capability to
  administer the security functions described in the security target when the device is enrolled.
  The mappings to specific functions are described in each applicable section of the TOE Summary
  Specification.
- **FMT\_SMF.1**: Windows provides the management functions that are described by FMT MOF.1(USER) and FMT MOF.1(ORG).
- **FMT\_SMF\_EXT.1**: After unenrollment, Windows will remove enterprise applications and inform the administrator that the device is no longer enrolled.

#### 6.2.6 Protection of the TSF

#### 6.2.6.1 Separation and Domain Isolation

The TSF provides a security domain for its own protection and provides process isolation. The security domains used within and by the TSF consists of the following:

- Hardware
- Virtualization Partitions (Windows 8 only)
- Kernel-mode software
- Trusted user-mode processes
- User-mode Administrative tools process

The TSF hardware is managed by the TSF kernel-mode software and is not modifiable by untrusted subjects. The TSF kernel-mode software is protected from modification by hardware execution state and protection for both physical memory and memory allocated to a partition; an operating system image runs within a partition. The TSF hardware provides a software interrupt instruction that causes a

Microsoft © 2015 Page 113 of 155

state change from user mode to kernel mode within a partition. The TSF kernel-mode software is responsible for processing all interrupts, and determines whether or not a valid kernel-mode call is being made. In addition, the TSF memory protection features ensure that attempts to access kernel-mode memory from user mode results in a hardware exception, ensuring that kernel-mode memory cannot be directly accessed by software not executing in the kernel mode.

The TSF provides process isolation for all user-mode processes through private virtual address spaces (private per process page tables), execution context (registers, program counters), and security context (handle table and token). The data structures defining process address space, execution context and security context are all stored in protected kernel-mode memory. All security relevant privileges are considered to enforce TSF Protection.

User-mode administrator tools execute with the security context of the process running on behalf of the authorized administrator. Administrator processes are protected like other user-mode processes, by process isolation.

Like TSF processes, user processes also are provided a private address space and process context, and therefore are protected from each other. Additionally, the TSF has the added ability to protect memory pages using Data Execution Prevention (DEP) which marks memory pages in a process as non-executable unless the location explicitly contains executable code. When the processor is asked to execute instructions from a page marked as data, the processor will raise an exception for the OS to handle.

The TSF implements cryptographic mechanisms within a distinct user-mode process, where its services can be accessed by both kernel- and user-mode components, in order to isolate those functions from the rest of the TSF to limit exposure to possible errors while protecting those functions from potential tampering attempts.

Furthermore, the TSF includes a Code Integrity Verification feature, also known as Kernel-mode code signing (KMCS), whereby device drivers will be loaded only if they are digitally signed by either Microsoft or from a trusted root certificate authority recognized by Microsoft. KMCS uses public-key cryptography technology to verify the digital signature of each driver as it is loaded. When a driver tries to load, the TSF decrypts the hash included with the driver using the public key stored in the certificate. It then verifies that the hash matches the one that it computes based on the driver code using the FIPS - certified cryptographic libraries in the TSF. The authenticity of the certificate is also checked in the same way, but using the certificate authority's public key, which must be configured in and trusted by the TOE.

#### 6.2.6.1.1 Supporting Hardware

The devices used in the evaluation have the following characteristics:

| Device                  | Processor           | Hardware Specifications  |
|-------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Microsoft Surface Pro 3 | Intel Core i7-4300U | http://www.intel.com/content/www/us/en/pro   |
|                         |                     | cessors/core/4th-gen-core-family-mobile-u-y-<br>processor-lines-vol-1-datasheet.html |
|                         |                     | (See section 2.1 System Memory Interface)  |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 114 of 155

#### **Table 6-11 Supporting Hardware**

#### 6.2.6.2 Protection from Implementation Weaknesses

Windows runs on processors that provide support for virtual memory and enforce restrictions to read, write, and execute pages of virtual and physical memory. Collectively, this is known as Data Execution Prevention (DEP). On Intel platforms, DEP is called NX (no execute).

The Windows kernel, user-mode applications, and all Windows Store Applications implement Address Space Layout Randomization (ASLR) in order to load executable code at unpredictable base addresses. The base address is generated using a pseudo-random number generator that is seeded by high quality entropy sources when available which provides at least 8 random bits for memory mapping. <sup>29</sup>

The Windows runtime also provides stack buffer overrun protection capability that will terminate a process after Windows detects a potential buffer overrun on the thread's stack by checking canary values in the function prolog and epilog as well as reordering the stack. All Windows binaries and Windows Store Applications implement stack buffer overrun protection by being complied with the /GS option, which is used for all Windows binaries; and checking that all Windows Store Applications are compiled with buffer overrun protection before ingesting the Windows Store Application into the Windows Store.

To enable these protections using the Microsoft Visual Studio development environment, programs are complied with /DYNAMICBASE option for ASLR, and optionally with /HIGHENTROPYVA for 64-bit ASLR, or /NXCOMPAT:NO to opt out of software-based DEP, and /GS (switched on by default) for stack buffer overrun protection.

Windows Store Applications are compiled with the /APPCONTAINER option which builds the executable to run in a Windows appcontainer, to run with the user-mode protections described in this section.

#### **6.2.6.3** *Time Service*

Each hardware platform supported by the TOE includes a real-time clock. The real-time clock is a device that can only be accessed using functions provided by the TSF and serves as the reference clock that maintains the system time. Specifically, the TSF provides functions that allow users, including the TSF itself, to query and set the clock, as well as functions to synchronize clocks within a domain. The ability to query the clock is unrestricted, while the ability to set the clock requires the SeSystemtimePrivilege. This privilege is only granted to authorized administrators to protect the integrity of the time service.

Synchronizing the clocks within a managed Windows deployment is critical for cross-machine communications and correlating activities which occur on multiple computers. Accuracy (which the NIAP OS PP describes as "reliable and monotonically increasing" is described in <a href="How the Windows Time">How the Windows Time</a>
<a href="Service Works">Service Works</a>. In addition this communications path can be protected using IPsec between the computers in the Active Directory domain.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 115 of 155

 $<sup>^{29}</sup>$  The PRNG is seeded by the TPM RBG, the RDRAND instruction and other sources.

<u>How To Configure an Authoritative Time Server in Windows Server describes</u> additional steps a domain administrator can take to explicitly specify the reference clock for the domain or an arbitrary NTP server.

Windows capabilities that are included in the OS protection profile evaluation which use the centralized (i.e., reliable) time service are:

- Audit record generation
- Network expirations for authentication and data access
- Session timeout and screen locking
- X.509 certificate generation, revocation, and expiration

These capabilities use the interfaces described at <a href="http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms725473">http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms725473</a>(v=vs.85).aspx. Public documentation about time functions in Windows is located at <a href="http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms724962">http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms724962</a>(v=vs.85).aspx. This describes the different types of time services offered to developers.

#### **6.2.6.4** *Self-Tests*

The Windows self-tests are a collection of tests which verify that the Windows is operating correctly. The self-tests are enabled when the administrator sets the "System Cryptography: Use FIPS compliant algorithms for encryption, hashing, and signing" policy; Windows will always run the self-tests described in this section.

The kernel-mode startup self-tests are:<sup>30</sup>

- AES-128 encrypt/decrypt EBC Known Answer Test
- AES-128 encrypt/decrypt CBC Known Answer Test
- AES-128 CMAC Known Answer Test
- AES-128 encrypt/decrypt CCM Known Answer Test
- AES-128 encrypt/decrypt GCM Known Answer Test
- RSA Known Answer Test
- ECDSA sign/verify test on P256 curve
- ECDH secret agreement Known Answer Test on P256 curve
- HMAC-SHA-1 Known Answer Test
- HMAC-SHA-256 and HMAC-SHA-512 Known Answer Tests
- SP800-56A concatenation KDF Known Answer Tests (same as Diffie-Hellman KAT)
- SP800-90 AES-256 counter mode DRBG Known Answer Tests (instantiate, generate and reseed)
- SP800-90 Dual-EC DRBG Known Answer Tests (instantiate, generate and reseed)

The Windows kernel-mode cryptographic module, the Kernel Mode Cryptographic Primitives Library, also performs pair-wise consistency checks upon each invocation of RSA, ECDH, and ECDSA key-pair generation and import as defined in FIPS 140-2. SP 800-56A conditional self-tests are also performed. A continuous RNG test (CRNGT) is used for the random number generators of this cryptographic module.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 116 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>30</sup> When the System Cryptography policy is set, Windows will always perform these self-tests however the evaluated configuration does not use the ECDH, HMAC, and SP800-56A algorithms.

All approved and non-approved RNGs have a CRNGT. The SP 800-90 DRBGs have health tests. A pairwise consistency test is done for Diffie-Hellman.

The Kernel Mode Cryptographic Primitives Library is loaded into the kernel's memory early during the boot process. If there is a failure in any startup self-test, the Kernel Mode Cryptographic Primitives Library DriverEntry function will fail to return the STATUS\_SUCCESS status to its caller. The only way to recover from the failure of a startup self-test is to attempt to invoke DriverEntry again, which will rerun the self-tests, and will only succeed if the self-tests passes.

By thoroughly exercising the cryptographic functions, Windows will prevent situations where user data is not stored in an encrypted state.

All operations on the TSF ultimately involve the use of cryptography, and so these tests are sufficient to determine that Windows is operating correctly.

#### 6.2.6.5 Windows Code Integrity

A Windows operating system verifies the integrity of Windows program code using the Secure Boot and Code Integrity capability in Windows.<sup>31</sup> On computers with a TPM, such as those used in the Mobile Device evaluation, before Windows will unlock the operating system drive, it will verify the integrity of the early boot components, which include the Boot Loader, OS Loader, and OS Resume binaries, in order to prevent tampering and to ensure that the drive is in the same computer as when the OS was initialized.

The Secure Boot capability Windows checks that the file integrity of early boot components has not been compromised and ensures that the files have not been modified, which mitigates the risk of rootkits and viruses, and that the data elements that contribute to creating the composite keys, which will ultimately unlock the operating system drive, have not been compromised. Secure Boot collects these file measurements and seals them to the TPM. When Secure Boot starts in the preboot environment, it will compare the sealed values from the TPM and if those values do not match the calculated values, Secure Boot will lock the system (which prevents booting) and display a warning on the computer display.

After Secure Boot verifies the integrity of early-running kernel components, including Code Integrity, the Code Integrity capability provides measures code integrity for kernel-mode and user-mode programs. Kernel-mode code signing (KMCS) prevents kernel-mode device drivers, such as the BitLocker Drive Encryption Drivers (fvevol.sys), from loading unless they are published and digitally signed by developers who have been vetted by one of a handful of trusted certificate authorities (CAs). KMCS, using public-key cryptography technologies, requires that kernel-mode code include a digital signature generated by one of the trusted certificate authorities. When a kernel device driver tries to load, Windows decrypts the hash included with the driver using the public key stored in the certificate, then verifies that the hash matches the one computed with the code. The authenticity of the certificate is checked in the same way, but using the certificate authority's public key, which is trusted by Windows. The root public

Microsoft © 2015 Page 117 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>31</sup> In MDF PP terminology, Windows runs on the application processor.

key of the certificate chain that verifies the signature must match one of the Microsoft's root public keys indicating that Microsoft is the publisher of the Windows image files. These Microsoft's root public keys are hardcoded in the Windows boot loader.

#### 6.2.6.6 Windows and Application Updates

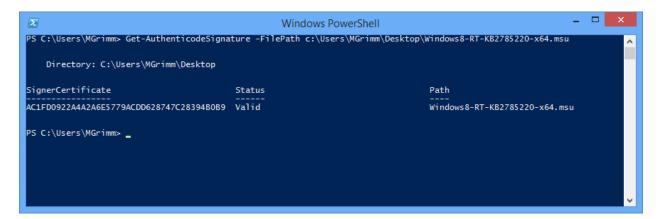
Updates to Windows are delivered as Microsoft Update Standalone Package files (.msu files) and are signed by Microsoft with two digital signatures, a SHA1 signature for legacy applications and a SHA256 signature for modern applications. The RSA SHA256 digital signature is signed by *Microsoft Corporation*, with a certification path through a Microsoft Code Signing certificate and ultimately the Microsoft Root Certification Authority. These certificates are checked by the Windows Trusted Installer prior to installing the update.

The Windows operating system will check that the certificate is valid and has not been revoked using a standard PKI CRL. Once the Trusted Installer determines that the package is valid, it will update Windows; otherwise the installation will abort and there will be an error message in the event log.. Note that the Windows installer will not install an update if the files in the package have lower version numbers than the installed files.

The integrity of the Microsoft Code Signing certificate on the computer is protected by the storage root key within the TPM, and the validated integrity of the Windows binaries as a result of Secure Boot and Code Integrity.

Updates to Windows are delivered through the Windows Update capability, which is enabled by default, or the user can go to <a href="http://www.microsoft.com/security/default.aspx">http://www.microsoft.com/security/default.aspx</a> to search and obtain security updates on their own volition.

A user can then check that the signature is valid either by viewing the digital signature details of the file from Windows Explorer or by using the Get-AuthenticodeSignature PowerShell Cmdlet. The following is an example of using PowerShell:



If the Get-AuthenticodeSignature PowerShell Cmdlet or Windows Explorer could not verify the signature, the status will be marked as invalid. This verification check uses the same functionality described above.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 118 of 155

#### 6.2.6.6.1 Windows Store Applications

In the same manner as checking the integrity of the Microsoft Update Packages and Windows executable code, Windows Store Applications and their installation packages are verified using a digital signature from *Microsoft Corporation* with the Code Signing usage.

#### **6.2.6.7 SFR Mapping**

The **TSF Protection** function satisfies the following SFRs:

- FPT\_AEX\_EXT.1: All Windows Store applications use address space layout randomization.
- **FPT\_AEX\_EXT.2**: The Intel processors included in this evaluation enforce read, write, and execute permissions for physical memory.
- **FPT\_AEX\_EXT.3**: Windows binaries are compiled with stack overflow protection (compiled using the **/Gs** option for native applications). **Appendix D: TOE Binary List** contains a list of Windows binaries along with any exceptions which do not use stack overflow protection.
- **FPT\_AEX\_EXT.4**: The Windows kernel and user-mode system services protect themselves from modification by untrusted subject programs; moreover user-mode programs execute in separate virtual address spaces.
- **FPT\_KST\_EXT.1**: During normal operation, Windows does not store plaintext key material in non-volatile storage.
- FPT\_KST\_EXT.2: Plaintext keys are not exported from the FIPS-validated cryptographic modules.
- FPT\_KST\_EXT.3: Users cannot export plain text keys from Windows Store applications.
- **FPT\_NOT\_EXT.1**: Windows will fall into a non-operational state after a failure of the Windows cryptographic self-tests and integrity failure for Windows system binaries.
- **FPT\_STM.1**: The real-time clock in each Windows platform, in conjunction with periodic domain synchronization, for domain-joined devices, and time signals from the LTE network, provide a reliable source of time stamps for the TSF; changing the clock can be restricted to authorized administrators.
- **FPT\_TST\_EXT.1**: Windows runs a series of self-tests that confirm that essential cryptographic operations are performed correctly and halts if the self-tests fail. Those cryptographic functions are then used to check integrity of TOE executables.
- **FPT\_TST\_EXT.2**: Windows checks the integrity of the Windows boot loader, OS loader, kernel, and system binaries and all application executable code, i.e, Windows Store Applications and updates to Windows and Windows Store Applications.
- **FPT\_TUD\_EXT.1**: Windows provides a means to identify the current version of the Windows software, the hardware model, and installed applications.
- **FPT\_TUD\_EXT.2**: Windows has an update mechanism to deliver updated binaries and a means for a user to confirm that the digital signatures, which ensure the integrity of the update, are valid for both the operating system and Windows Store Applications.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 119 of 155

#### 6.2.7 TOE Access

#### 6.2.7.1 Windows 8.1

Windows provides the ability for a user to lock their interactive logon session at their own volition or after a user-defined inactivity timeout. Windows also provides the ability for the administrator to specify the interval of inactivity after which the session will be locked. This policy will be applied to either the local machine or the computers within a domain using either local policy or group policy respectively. If both the administrator and a standard user specify an inactivity timeout period, Windows will lock the session when the shortest time period expires.

Once a user has a desktop session, they can invoke the session locking function by using the same key sequence used to invoke the trusted path (Ctrl+Alt+Del). This key sequence is captured by the TSF and cannot be intercepted or altered by any user process. The result of that key sequence is a menu of functions, one of which is to lock the workstation. The user can also lock their desktop session by going to the Start screen, selecting their logon name, and then choosing the "Lock" option.

Windows constantly monitors the mouse, keyboard, touch display, and the orientation sensor for inactivity in order to determine if they are inactive for the specified time period. After which, Windows will lock the workstation and execute the screen saver unless the user is streaming video such as a movie. Note that if the workstation was not locked manually, the TSF will lock the display and start the screen saver program if and when the inactivity period is exceeded, as well any notifications from applications which have registered to publish the application's badge or the badge with associated notification text to the locked screen.<sup>32</sup> The user has the option to not display any notifications, or choose one Windows Store Application to display notification text, and select other applications display their badge.

For Windows 8.1 the inbox Calendar, Weather, and Alarm applications can generate notifications, and when selected to display notification text they will show the location and time of the upcoming and inprogress meeting, the current weather conditions, and an expired alarm times. In addition, Mail application can be configured to display a badge but not notification text.

After the computer was locked, in order to unlock their session, the user either presses a key or swipes the display. The user must provide the **Ctrl+Alt+Del** key combination if the **Interactive Logon: Do not required CTRL+ALT+DEL** policy is set to disabled.<sup>33</sup> Either action will result in an authentication dialog. The user must then re-enter their authentication data, which has been cached by the local system from the initial logon, after which the user's display will be restored and the session will resume. Alternately, an authorized administrator can enter their administrator identity and password in the authentication dialog. If the TSF can successfully authenticate the administrator, the user will be logged off, rather than returning to the user's session, leaving the workstation ready to authenticate a new user.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 120 of 155

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>32</sup> The badge is a logo which represents the Windows Store Application and the notification text can be items such as a count of unread messages or an appointment.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>33</sup> This policy is defined under Local Policies / Security Options.

As part of establishing the interactive logon session, Windows can be configured to display a logon banner, which is specified by the administrator, that the user must accept prior to establishing the session.

#### **6.2.7.2 SFR Mapping**

The **TOE Access** function satisfies the following SFRs:

- **FTA\_SSL\_EXT.1**: Windows 8.1 will transition to a locked state when there is an administrator-specified period of inactivity or when the user explicitly locks the device.
- FTA\_WSE\_EXT.1: An authorized administrator can specify which Wi-Fi networks to connect to, as specified in FMT\_SMF.1.
- **FTA\_TAB.1**: An authorized administrator can define and modify a banner that will be displayed prior to allowing a user to logon.

#### 6.2.8 Trusted Path / Channels

Windows Store applications used the <a href="httpClient"><u>HttpClient</u></a> interface to establish a secure HTTPS/TLS channel. Windows Store applications do not have access to low level interfaces to perform TLS, the <a href="httpClient"><u>HttpClient</u></a> interface supports performing TLS in the context of an HTTPS connection by passing a HTTPS Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) to the <a href="httpClient"><u>HttpClient</u></a> constructor. When a HTTPS URI is used then TLS will be used when establishing the HTTP connection. Mobile Device Managers use HTTPS/TLS: the mobile device authenticates against the MDM to check the identity of the MDM service, and the MDM authenticates the client to ensure the identity of the client device.

Third party VPN Windows Store applications use the <u>Windows.Networking.Vpn</u> interface to establish an IPsec VPN secure channel

Windows implements IEEE 802.11-2012, IEEE 802.1X and EAP-TLS to provide authenticated wireless networking sessions when requested by the user.

#### 6.2.8.1 The specific details for each protocol are described in section Networking

Windows has a native implementation of IEEE 802.11-2012 to provide secure wireless local area networking (Wi-Fi). Windows uses PRF-384 in WPA2 Wi-Fi sessions and generates AES 128-bit keys using the Windows RBG. Windows complies with the IEEE 802.11-2012 standard and interoperates with other devices that implement the standard. TOE devices have received WPA2 certification, both Enterprise and Personal, and Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Interoperability Certificates from the Wi-Fi Alliance:

• Surface Pro 3 (the Marvell 8897 adapter is certified)

Windows implements key wrapping and unwrapping according to the NIST SP 800-38F specification (the "KW" mode) and so unwraps the Wi-Fi Group Temporal Key (GTK) which was sent by the access point. Because the GTK was protected by AES Key Wrap when it was delivered in an EAPOL-Key frame, the GTK is not exposed to the network.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 121 of 155

Network Protocols.

To summarize the **Trusted Path / Channel** function satisfies this SFR:

• **FPT\_ITC\_EXT.1**: Windows provides several trusted network channels that protect data in transit from disclosure, provide data integrity, and endpoint identification that is used by 802.11-2012, 802.1X, EAP-TLS, TLS, HTTPS and IPsec.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 122 of 155

# 7 Protection Profile Conformance Claim

This section provides the protection profile conformance claim and supporting justifications and rationale.

#### 7.1 Rationale for Conformance to Protection Profile

This Security Target is in strict compliance with the Protection Profile for Mobile Device Fundamentals, version 1.1, February 12, 2014 (MDF PP).

For all of the content incorporated from the protection profile, the corresponding rationale in that protection profile remains applicable to demonstrate the correspondence between the TOE security functional requirements and TOE security objectives.

The requirements in the Protection Profile for Mobile Device Fundamentals are assumed to represent a complete set of requirements that serve to address any interdependencies. Given that all of the functional requirements in the MDF PP have been copied into this security target, the dependency analysis for those requirements is not reproduced here.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 123 of 155

# 8 Rationale for Modifications to the Security Requirements

This section provides a rationale that describes how the Security Target reproduced the security functional requirements and security assurance requirements from the protection profile.

# 8.1 Functional Requirements

This Security Target includes security functional requirements (SFRs) that can be mapped to SFRs found in the protection profile along with SFRs that describe additional features and capabilities. The mapping from protection profile SFRs to security target SFRs along with rationale for operations is presented in **Table 8-1 Rationale for Operations**. SFR operations left incomplete in the protection profile have been completed in this security target and are identified within each SFR in section 5.1 TOE Security Functional Requirements.

**Table 8-1 Rationale for Operations** 

| MDF PP Requirement | ST Requirement     | Operation & Rationale                         |
|--------------------|--------------------|---|
| FAU_GEN.1          | FAU_GEN.1          | A selection which is allowed by the PP.       |
| FAU_SEL.1          | FAU_SEL.1          | An assignment which is allowed by the PP.     |
| FAU_STG_EXT.1      | FAU_STG_EXT.1      | Copied from the PP without changes.           |
| FCS_CKM.1(1)       | FCS_CKM.1(ASYM KA) | A selection which is allowed by the PP.       |
| FCS_CKM.1(2)       | FCS_CKM.1(ASYM AU) | A selection which is allowed by the PP.       |
| FCS_CKM.1(3)       | FCS_CKM.1(WLAN)    | Copied from the PP without changes.           |
| FCS_CKM.2          | FCS_CKM.2          | Copied from the PP without changes.           |
| FCS_CKM_EXT.1      | FCS_CKM_EXT.1      | A selection which is allowed by the PP.       |
| FCS_CKM_EXT.2      | FCS_CKM_EXT.2      | A selection which is allowed by the PP.       |
| FCS_CKM_EXT.3      | FCS_CKM_EXT.3      | Two selections which are allowed by the PP.   |
| FCS_CKM_EXT.4      | FCS_CKM_EXT.4      | A selection which is allowed by the PP.       |
| FCS_CKM_EXT.5      | FCS_CKM_EXT.5      | A selection which is allowed by the PP.       |
| FCS_CKM_EXT.6      | FCS_CKM_EXT.6      | Copied from the PP without changes.           |
| FCS_COP.1(1)       | FCS_COP.1(SYM)     | Two selections which are allowed by the PP.   |
| FCS_COP.1(2)       | FCS_COP.1(HASH)    | Two selections which are allowed by the PP.   |
| FCS_COP.1(3)       | FCS_COP.1(SIGN)    | A selection which is allowed by the PP.       |
| FCS_COP.1(4)       | FCS_COP.1(HMAC)    | Three selections which are allowed by the PP. |
| FCS_COP.1(5)       | FCS_COP.1(PBKD)    | Two selections which are allowed by           |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 124 of 155

| MDF PP Requirement | ST Requirement  | Operation & Rationale                                     |
|--------------------|-----------------|---|
|                    |                 | the PP.   |
| FCS_IV_EXT.1       | FCS_IV_EXT.1    | Copied from the PP without changes.                       |
| FCS_RBG_EXT.1      | FCS_RBG_EXT.1   | Three selections which are allowed                        |
|                    |                 | by the PP.  |
| FCS_SRV_EXT.1      | FCS_SRV_EXT.1   | A selection which is allowed by the                       |
|                    |                 | PP and refinements to switch to the                       |
|                    |                 | SFR labels used in the security target.                   |
| FCS_STG_EXT.1      | FCS_STG_EXT.1   | Five selections which are allowed by the PP.              |
| FCS_STG_EXT.2      | FCS_STG_EXT.2   | Three selections which are allowed                        |
| 1.03_510_EXIIE     | 1 65_51 6_EX1.2 | by the PP.  |
| FCS_STG_EXT.3      | FCS_STG_EXT.3   | A selection which is allowed by the                       |
|                    |                 | PP.   |
| FCS_TLS_EXT.1      | FCS_TLS_EXT.1   | Three selections which are allowed                        |
|                    |                 | by the PP.  |
| FCS_TLS_EXT.2      | FCS_TLS_EXT.2   | Two selections which are allowed by the PP.               |
| FCS_HTTPS_EXT.1    | FCS_HTTPS_EXT.1 | Copied from the PP without changes.                       |
| FDP_ACF_EXT.1      | FDP_ACF_EXT.1   | Copied from the PP without changes.                       |
| FDP_DAR_EXT.1      | FDP_DAR_EXT.1   | A selection which is allowed by the PP.                   |
| FDP_STG_EXT.1      | FDP_STG_EXT.1   | Copied from the PP without changes.                       |
| FDP_IFC_EXT.1      | FDP_IFC_EXT.1   | A selection which is allowed by the                       |
|                    |                 | PP.   |
| FIA_AFL_EXT.1      | FIA_AFL_EXT.1   | Two assignments and a selection                           |
|                    |                 | which is allowed by the PP.                               |
| FIA_BLT_EXT.1      | FIA_BLT_EXT.1   | Copied from the PP without changes.                       |
| FIA_PAE_EXT.1      | FIA_PAE_EXT.1   | Copied from the PP without changes.                       |
| FIA_PMG_EXT.1      | FIA_PMG_EXT.1   | An assignment and a selection which is allowed by the PP. |
| FIA_TRT_EXT.1      | FIA_TRT_EXT.1   | A selection which is allowed by the PP.                   |
| FIA UAU.7          | FIA UAU.7       | Copied from the PP without changes.                       |
| FIA_UAU_EXT.1      | FIA UAU EXT.1   | Copied from the PP without changes.                       |
| FIA_UAU_EXT.2      | FIA_UAU_EXT.2   | A selection which is allowed by the                       |
| TIA_OAO_EXT.2      | 11/1_0/10_EX1.2 | PP.   |
| FIA_UAU_EXT.3      | FIA_UAU_EXT.3   | A selection which is allowed by the PP.                   |
| FIA_X509_EXT.1     | FIA_X509_EXT.1  | A selection which is allowed by the PP.                   |
| FIA_X509_EXT.2     | FIA_X509_EXT.2  | Four selections which are allowed by the PP.              |
| FIA_X509_EXT.3     | FIA_X509_EXT.3  | Copied from the PP without changes.                       |
| FMT_MOF.1(1)       | FMT_MOF.1(USER) | Multiple selections which are allowed by the PP.          |
| FMT_MOF.1(2)       | FMT_MOF.1(ORG)  | Multiple selections which are allowed                     |
|                    | _ ` '           |   |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 125 of 155

| MDF PP Requirement | ST Requirement | Operation & Rationale                 |
|--------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|
|                    |                | by the PP.                            |
| FMT_SMF.1          | FMT_SMF.1      | Multiple selections, assignments, and |
|                    |                | refinements which are allowed by the  |
|                    |                | PP.                                   |
| FMT_SMF_EXT.1      | FMT_SMF_EXT.1  | Three selections which are allowed    |
|                    |                | by the PP.                            |
| FPT_AEX_EXT.1      | FPT_AEX_EXT.1  | Copied from the PP without changes.   |
| FPT_AEX_EXT.2      | FPT_AEX_EXT.2  | Copied from the PP without changes.   |
| FPT_AEX_EXT.3      | FPT_AEX_EXT.3  | Copied from the PP without changes.   |
| FPT_AEX_EXT.4      | FPT_AEX_EXT.4  | Copied from the PP without changes.   |
| FPT_KST_EXT.1(1)   | FPT_KST_EXT.1  | Copied from the PP without changes.   |
| FPT_KST_EXT.2      | FPT_KST_EXT.2  | Copied from the PP without changes.   |
| FPT_KST_EXT.3      | FPT_KST_EXT.3  | Copied from the PP without changes.   |
| FPT_NOT_EXT.1      | FPT_NOT_EXT.1  | Two selections which are allowed by   |
|                    |                | the PP.                               |
| FPT_STM.1          | FPT_STM.1      | Copied from the PP without changes.   |
| FPT_TST_EXT.1      | FPT_TST_EXT.1  | Copied from the PP without changes.   |
| FPT_TST_EXT.2      | FPT_TST_EXT.2  | Three selections which are allowed    |
|                    |                | by the PP.                            |
| FPT_TUD_EXT.1      | FPT_TUD_EXT.1  | Copied from the PP without changes.   |
| FPT_TUD_EXT.2      | FPT_TUD_EXT.2  | Three selections which are allowed    |
|                    |                | by the PP.                            |
| FTA_SSL_EXT.1      | FTA_SSL_EXT.1  | Assignment allowed by the PP.         |
| FTA_WSE_EXT.1      | FTA_WSE_EXT.1  | Copied from the PP without changes.   |
| FTA_TAB.1          | FTA_TAB.1      | Copied from the PP without changes.   |
| FTP_ITC_EXT.1      | FTP_ITC_EXT.1  | A selection and assignment which are  |
|                    |                | allowed by the PP.                    |

# **8.2 Security Assurance Requirements**

The statement of security assurance requirements (SARs) found in section 5.2 TOE Security Assurance Requirements, is in strict conformance with the Protection Profile for Mobile Device Fundamentals.

# 8.3 Rationale for the TOE Summary Specification

This section, in conjunction with section 6, the TOE Summary Specification (TSS), provides evidence that the security functions are suitable to meet the TOE security requirements.

Each subsection in section 6, TOE Security Functions (TSFs), describes a Security Function (SF) of the TOE. Each description is followed with rationale that indicates which requirements are satisfied by aspects of the corresponding SF. The set of security functions work together to satisfy all of the functional requirements. Furthermore, all the security functions are necessary in order for the TSF to provide the required security functionality.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 126 of 155

The set of security functions work together to provide all of the security requirements as indicated in **Table 8-2**. The security functions described in the TOE Summary Specification and listed in the tables below are all necessary for the required security functionality in the TSF.

**Table 8-2 Requirement to Security Function Correspondence** 

|                    |       | Cryptographic Protection | User Data Protection |        | Security Management | TSF Protection | Resource Utilization | ess        | Trusted Path / Channel |
|--------------------|-------|--------------------------|----------------------|--------|---------------------|----------------|----------------------|------------|------------------------|
|                    |       | togı                     | Dai                  |        | rity                | rot            | nrc                  | TOE Access | ted                    |
| Requirement        | Audit | ryp                      | Jser                 | &<br>A | ecn                 | SF             | Seso                 | OE.        | rus                    |
| FAU_GEN.1          | X     |                          |                      | _      | S                   | <u> </u>       | <u> </u>             |            |                        |
| FAU_SEL.1          | Х     |                          |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FAU_STG_EXT.1      | Х     |                          |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_CKM.1(ASYM KA) |       | Х                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_CKM.1(ASYM AU) |       | Х                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_CKM.1(WLAN)    |       | Χ                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_CKM.2          |       | Χ                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_CKM_EXT.1      |       | Χ                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_CKM_EXT.2      |       | Χ                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_CKM_EXT.3      |       | Х                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_CKM_EXT.4      |       | Χ                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_CKM_EXT.5      |       | Χ                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_CKM_EXT.6      |       | Х                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_COP.1(SYM)     |       | Х                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_COP.1(HASH)    |       | Х                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_COP.1(SIGN)    |       | Х                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_COP.1(HMAC)    |       | Х                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_COP.1(PBKD)    |       | Χ                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_IV_EXT.1       |       | Χ                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_RBG_EXT.1      |       | Χ                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_SRV_EXT.1      |       | Χ                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_STG_EXT.1      |       | Χ                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_STG_EXT.2      |       | Χ                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_STG_EXT.3      |       | Х                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_TLS_EXT.1      |       | Х                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_TLS_EXT.2      |       | X                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FCS_HTTPS_EXT.1    |       | Χ                        |                      |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FDP_ACF_EXT.1      |       |                          | X                    |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FDP_DAR_EXT.1      |       |                          | X                    |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FDP_STG_EXT.1      |       |                          | X                    |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FDP_IFC_EXT.1      |       |                          | Χ                    |        |                     |                |                      |            |                        |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 127 of 155

| Requirement     | Audit | Cryptographic Protection | User Data Protection | I&A | Security Management | TSF Protection | Resource Utilization | TOE Access | Trusted Path / Channel |
|-----------------|-------|--------------------------|----------------------|-----|---------------------|----------------|----------------------|------------|------------------------|
| FIA_AFL_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      | Χ   |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FIA_BLT_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      | Χ   |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FIA_PAE_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      | Χ   |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FIA_PMG_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      | Χ   |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FIA_TRT_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      | Χ   |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FIA_UAU.7       |       |                          |                      | Χ   |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FIA_UAU_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      | Χ   |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FIA_UAU_EXT.2   |       |                          |                      | Χ   |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FIA_UAU_EXT.3   |       |                          |                      | Χ   |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FIA_X509_EXT.1  |       |                          |                      | Χ   |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FIA_X509_EXT.2  |       |                          |                      | Χ   |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FIA_X509_EXT.3  |       |                          |                      | Χ   |                     |                |                      |            |                        |
| FMT_MOF.1(USER) |       |                          |                      |     | Χ                   |                |                      |            |                        |
| FMT_MOF.1(ORG)  |       |                          |                      |     | Χ                   |                |                      |            |                        |
| FMT_SMF.1       |       |                          |                      |     | Х                   |                |                      |            |                        |
| FMT_SMF_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      |     | Χ                   |                |                      |            |                        |
| FPT_AEX_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      |     |                     | Х              |                      |            |                        |
| FPT_AEX_EXT.2   |       |                          |                      |     |                     | Х              |                      |            |                        |
| FPT_AEX_EXT.3   |       |                          |                      |     |                     | Х              |                      |            |                        |
| FPT_AEX_EXT.4   |       |                          |                      |     |                     | Х              |                      |            |                        |
| FPT_KST_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      |     |                     | Х              |                      |            |                        |
| FPT_KST_EXT.2   |       |                          |                      |     |                     | Х              |                      |            |                        |
| FPT_KST_EXT.3   |       |                          |                      |     |                     | Х              |                      |            |                        |
| FPT_NOT_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      |     |                     | Х              |                      |            |                        |
| FPT_STM.1       |       |                          |                      |     |                     | X              |                      |            |                        |
| FPT_TST_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      |     |                     | X              |                      |            |                        |
| FPT_TST_EXT.2   |       |                          |                      |     |                     | X              |                      |            |                        |
| FPT_TUD_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      |     |                     | X              |                      |            |                        |
| FPT_TUD_EXT.2   |       |                          |                      |     |                     | Χ              |                      | V          |                        |
| FTA_SSL_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      |     |                     |                |                      | X          |                        |
| FTA_WSE_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      |     |                     |                |                      | X          |                        |
| FTA_TAB.1       |       |                          |                      |     |                     |                |                      | Χ          | V                      |
| FTP_ITC_EXT.1   |       |                          |                      |     |                     |                |                      |            | Х                      |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 128 of 155

# 9 Appendix A: List of Abbreviations

| Abbreviation | Meaning  |  |
|--------------|--|--|
| 3DES         | Triple DES   |  |
| ACE          | Access Control Entry   |  |
| ACL          | Access Control List  |  |
| ACP          | Access Control Policy  |  |
| AD           | Active Directory   |  |
| ADAM         | Active Directory Application Mode                                  |  |
| AES          | Advanced Encryption Standard                                       |  |
| AGD          | Administrator Guidance Document                                    |  |
| AH           | Authentication Header  |  |
| ALPC         | Advanced Local Process Communication                               |  |
| ANSI         | American National Standards Institute                              |  |
| API          | Application Programming Interface                                  |  |
| APIC         | Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller                         |  |
| BTG          | BitLocker To Go  |  |
| CA           | Certificate Authority  |  |
| CBAC         | Claims Basic Access Control, see DYN                               |  |
| CBC          | Cipher Block Chaining  |  |
| CC           | Common Criteria  |  |
| CD-ROM       | Compact Disk Read Only Memory                                      |  |
| CIFS         | Common Internet File System  |  |
| CIMCPP       | Certificate Issuing and Management Components For Basic            |  |
|              | Robustness Environments Protection Profile, Version 1.0, April 27, |  |
|              | 2009   |  |
| CM           | Configuration Management; Control Management                       |  |
| COM          | Component Object Model   |  |
| СР           | Content Provider   |  |
| CPU          | Central Processing Unit  |  |
| CRL          | Certificate Revocation List  |  |
| CryptoAPI    | Cryptographic API  |  |
| CSP          | Cryptographic Service Provider                                     |  |
| DAC          | Discretionary Access Control                                       |  |
| DACL         | Discretionary Access Control List                                  |  |
| DC           | Domain Controller  |  |
| DEP          | Data Execution Prevention  |  |
| DES          | Data Encryption Standard   |  |
| DH           | Diffie-Hellman   |  |
| DHCP         | Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol                                |  |
| DFS          | Distributed File System  |  |
| DMA          | Direct Memory Access   |  |
| DNS          | Domain Name System   |  |
| DS           | Directory Service  |  |
| DSA          | Digital Signature Algorithm  |  |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 129 of 155

| DYN      | Dynamic Access Control   |
|----------|--|
| EAL      | Evaluation Assurance Level                                     |
| ECB      | Electronic Code Book   |
| EFS      | Encrypting File System   |
| ESP      | Encapsulating Security Protocol                                |
| FEK      | File Encryption Key  |
| FIPS     | Federal Information Processing Standard                        |
| FRS      | File Replication Service                                       |
| FSMO     | Flexible Single Master Operation                               |
| FTP      | File Transfer Protocol   |
| FVE      | Full Volume Encryption   |
| GB       | Gigabyte   |
| GC       | Global Catalog   |
| GHz      | Gigahertz  |
| GPC      | -  |
| GPO GPO  | Group Policy Chiest  |
|          | Group Policy Object  |
| GPOSPP   | US Government Protection Profile for General-Purpose Operating |
| CDT      | System in a Networked Environment                              |
| GPT      | Group Policy Template  |
| GPT      | GUID Partition Table   |
| GUI      | Graphical User Interface                                       |
| GUID     | Globally Unique Identifiers                                    |
| НТТР     | Hypertext Transfer Protocol                                    |
| HTTPS    | Secure HTTP  |
| 1/0      | Input / Output   |
| I&A      | Identification and Authentication                              |
| IA       | Information Assurance  |
| ICF      | Internet Connection Firewall                                   |
| ICMP     | Internet Control Message Protocol                              |
| ICS      | Internet Connection Sharing                                    |
| ID       | Identification   |
| IDE      | Integrated Drive Electronics                                   |
| IETF     | Internet Engineering Task Force                                |
| IFS      | Installable File System  |
| IIS      | Internet Information Services                                  |
| IKE      | Internet Key Exchange  |
| IP       | Internet Protocol  |
| IPv4     | IP Version 4   |
| IPv6     | IP Version 6   |
| IPC      | Inter-process Communication                                    |
| IPI      | Inter-process Interrupt  |
| IPsec    | IP Security  |
| ISAPI    | Internet Server API  |
| IT       | Information Technology   |
| KDC      | Key Distribution Center  |
| LAN      | Local Area Network   |
| <u> </u> | 1  |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 130 of 155

| LDAP   | Lightweight Directory Access Protocol          |
|--------|--|
| LPC    | Local Procedure Call                           |
| LSA    | Local Security Authority                       |
| LSASS  | LSA Subsystem Service                          |
| LUA    | Least-privilege User Account                   |
| MAC    | Message Authentication Code                    |
| MB     | Megabyte                                       |
| MMC    | Microsoft Management Console                   |
| MSR    | Model Specific Register                        |
| NAC    | (Cisco) Network Admission Control              |
| NAP    | Network Access Protection                      |
| NAT    | Network Address Translation                    |
| NIC    | Network Interface Card                         |
| NIST   | National Institute of Standards and Technology |
| NLB    | Network Load Balancing                         |
| NMI    | Non-maskable Interrupt                         |
| NTFS   | ·  |
|        | New Technology File System                     |
| NTLM   | New Technology LAN Manager                     |
| OS     | Operating System                               |
| PAE    | Physical Address Extension                     |
| PC/SC  | Personal Computer/Smart Card                   |
| PIN    | Personal Identification Number                 |
| PKCS   | Public Key Certificate Standard                |
| PKI    | Public Key Infrastructure                      |
| PP     | Protection Profile                             |
| RADIUS | Remote Authentication Dial In Service          |
| RAID   | Redundant Array of Independent Disks           |
| RAM    | Random Access Memory                           |
| RAS    | Remote Access Service                          |
| RC4    | Rivest's Cipher 4                              |
| RID    | Relative Identifier                            |
| RNG    | Random Number Generator                        |
| RPC    | Remote Procedure Call                          |
| RSA    | Rivest, Shamir and Adleman                     |
| RSASSA | RSA Signature Scheme with Appendix             |
| SA     | Security Association                           |
| SACL   | System Access Control List                     |
| SAM    | Security Assurance Measure                     |
| SAML   | Security Assertion Markup Language             |
| SAR    | Security Assurance Requirement                 |
| SAS    | Secure Attention Sequence                      |
| SD     | Security Descriptor                            |
| SHA    | Secure Hash Algorithm                          |
| SID    | Security Identifier                            |
| SIP    | Session Initiation Protocol                    |
| SIPI   | Startup IPI                                    |
| -      | T-TT - T-T                                     |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 131 of 155

| SF     | Security Functions                            |
|--------|---|
| SFP    | Security Functional Policy                    |
| SFR    | Security Functional Requirement               |
| SMB    | Server Message Block                          |
| SMI    | System Management Interrupt                   |
| SMTP   | Simple Mail Transport Protocol                |
| SP     | Service Pack                                  |
| SPI    | Security Parameters Index                     |
| SPI    | Stateful Packet Inspection                    |
| SPS    | Storage Primary Seed                          |
| SRK    | Storage Root Key                              |
| SRM    | Security Reference Monitor                    |
|        | ·   |
| SSL    | Secure Sockets Layer                          |
| SSP    | Security Support Providers                    |
| SSPI   | Security Support Provider Interface           |
| ST     | Security Target                               |
| SYSVOL | System Volume                                 |
| TCP    | Transmission Control Protocol                 |
| TDI    | Transport Driver Interface                    |
| TLS    | Transport Layer Security                      |
| TOE    | Target of Evaluation                          |
| TPM    | Trusted Platform Module                       |
| TSC    | TOE Scope of Control                          |
| TSF    | TOE Security Functions                        |
| TSS    | TOE Summary Specification                     |
| UART   | Universal Asynchronous Receiver / Transmitter |
| UI     | User Interface                                |
| UID    | User Identifier                               |
| UNC    | Universal Naming Convention                   |
| US     | United States                                 |
| UPN    | User Principal Name                           |
| URL    | Uniform Resource Locator                      |
| USB    | Universal Serial Bus                          |
| USN    | Update Sequence Number                        |
| v5     | Version 5                                     |
| VDS    | Virtual Disk Service                          |
| VPN    | Virtual Private Network                       |
| VSS    | Volume Shadow Copy Service                    |
| WAN    | Wide Area Network                             |
| WCF    | Windows Communications Framework              |
| WebDAV | Web Document Authoring and Versioning         |
| WebSSO | Web Single Sign On                            |
| WDM    | Windows Driver Model                          |
| WIF    | Windows Identity Framework                    |
| WMI    | Windows Management Instrumentation            |
| WSC    | Windows Security Center                       |
| VVJC   | VVIII GOVV3 JECUITLY CETTER                   |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 132 of 155

| WU   | Windows Update                        |
|------|---------------------------------------|
| WSDL | Web Service Description Language      |
| WWW  | World-Wide Web                        |
| X64  | A 64-bit instruction set architecture |
| X86  | A 32-bit instruction set architecture |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 133 of 155

# **10 Appendix B: Interfaces**

This section is a list of APIs used during testing of Windows 8.1.

| API                          | Description   |
|------------------------------|---|
| CryptographicBuffer.Generat  | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
| eRandom                      | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.cryptogr |
|                              | aphicbuffer.generaterandom.aspx                                     |
| CryptographicBuffer.Generat  | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
| eRandomNumber                | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.cryptogr |
|                              | aphicbuffer.generaterandomnumber.aspx                               |
| CryptographicEngine.Encrypt  | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
|                              | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.core.cry |
|                              | <u>ptographicengine.encrypt.aspx</u>                                |
| CryptographicEngine.Decrypt  | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
|                              | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.core.cry |
|                              | ptographicengine.decrypt.aspx                                       |
| HashAlgorithmProvider.Creat  | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
| eHash                        | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.core.ha  |
|                              | shalgorithmprovider.createhash.aspx                                 |
| HashAlgorithmProvider.Hash   | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
| Data                         | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.core.ha  |
|                              | shalgorithmprovider.hashdata.aspx                                   |
| CryptographicEngine.Sign     | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
|                              | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.core.cry |
|                              | <u>ptographicengine.sign.aspx</u>                                   |
| CryptographicEngine.VerifySi | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
| gnature                      | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.core.cry |
|                              | <u>ptographicengine.verifysignature.aspx</u>                        |
| KeyDerivationParameters.Bui  | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
| ldForPbkdf2                  | us/library/windows/apps/windows.security.cryptography.core.keyderiv |
|                              | ationparameters.buildforpbkdf2.aspx                                 |
| AsymmetricKeyAlgorithmPro    | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
| vider.CreateKeyPair          | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.core.asy |
|                              | mmetrickeyalgorithmprovider.createkeypair.aspx                      |
| CryptographicEngine.SignAsy  | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
| nc                           | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.core.cry |
|                              | <u>ptographicengine.signasync.aspx</u>                              |
| CryptographicEngine.SignHas  | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
| hedData                      | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.core.cry |
|                              | <u>ptographicengine.signhasheddata.aspx</u>                         |
| CryptographicEngine.SignHas  | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
| hedDataAsync                 | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.core.cry |
| <u> </u>                     | <u>ptographicengine.signhasheddataasync.aspx</u>                    |
| CryptographicEngine.VerifySi | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |
| gnatureWithHashInput         | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.core.cry |
|                              | ptographicengine.verifysignaturewithhashinput.aspx                  |
| AsymmetricKeyAlgorithmPro    | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-                                       |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 134 of 155

| vider.ImportKeyPair         | us/library/windows/apps/windows.security.cryptography.core.asymme     |
|-----------------------------|---|
|                             | <u>trickeyalgorithmprovider.importkeypair.aspx</u>                    |
| CertificateEnrollmentManage | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-   |
| r.ImportPfxDataAsync        | us/library/windows/apps/windows.security.cryptography.certificates.ce |
|                             | rtificateenrollmentmanager.importpfxdataasync.aspx                    |
| CmsDetachedSignature.Gene   | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-   |
| rateSignatureAsync          | us/library/windows/apps/dn298272.aspx                                 |
| CmsAttachedSignature.Gener  | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-   |
| ateSignatureAsync           | us/library/windows/apps/dn298266.aspx                                 |
| HttpClient                  | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-   |
|                             | us/library/windows/apps/windows.web.http.httpclient.aspx              |
| Windows.Networking.Vpn      | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-   |
|                             | us/library/windows/apps/windows.networking.vpn.aspxn                  |
| Certificate.BuildChainAsync | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-   |
|                             | us/library/windows/apps/windows.security.cryptography.certificates.ce |
|                             | <u>rtificate.buildchainasync.aspx</u>                                 |
| CertificateChain.Validate   | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-   |
|                             | us/library/windows/apps/dn279161.aspx                                 |
| Windows.Security.Cryptograp | http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-   |
| hy.DataProtection           | us/library/windows/apps/xaml/windows.security.cryptography.datapro    |
|                             | <u>tection.aspx</u>   |

Microsoft © 2015 Page 135 of 155

# 11 Appendix C: Analysis of Special Publication 800-56A and 800-56B

# 11.1 Special Publication 800-56A

The source document is NIST Special Publication 800-56A, "<u>Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key</u> <u>Establishment Schemes Using Discrete Logarithm Cryptography</u>".

#### 11.1.1 NIST SP 800-56A Sections

#### 11.1.1.1 Sections 1 – 3

The first three (3) sections do not specify any "shall", "shall not", "should" or "should not" statements. For completeness, they are:

- 1. Introduction
- 2. Scope and Purpose
- 3. Definitions, Symbols and Abbreviations

#### 11.1.1.2 Section 4 Key Establishment Schemes Overview

This section is merely a high-level explanation of what key establishment is. Section 4.1 contains the statement "shall" and is listed here for completeness.

#### 4.1 Key Agreement Preparations by an Owner

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### **4.2 Key Agreement Process**

**4.3 DLC-based Key Transport Process** 

#### 11.1.1.3 Section 5 Cryptographic Elements

### **5.1 Cryptographic Hash Functions**

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.2 Message Authentication Code (MAC) Algorithm

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

Microsoft © 2015 Page 136 of 155

N/A

#### **5.2.1 MacTag Computation**

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.2.2 MacTag Checking

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### **5.2.3 Implementation Validation Message**

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.3 Random Number Generation

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.4 Nonces

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

The TOE implements random nonces.

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

# 5.5 Domain Parameters

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

Microsoft © 2015 Page 137 of 155

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.5.1 Domain Parameter Generation

This is a section header.

#### 5.5.1.1 FFC Domain Parameter Generation

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

The "should" statement is:

"If the appropriate security strength does not have an FFC parameter set, then Elliptic Curve Cryptography **should** be used (see Section 5.5.1.2)."

The "should" statement only applies to user behavior, which is outside the scope of the

TOE.

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.5.1.2 ECC Domain Parameter Generation

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### **5.5.2** Assurances of Domain Parameter Validity

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

The "should" statement is:

"The application performing the key establishment on behalf of the party **should** determine whether or not to allow key establishment based upon the method(s) of assurance that was used."

The "should" statement only applies to an application, which is outside the scope of the TOE.

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

### **5.5.3 Domain Parameter Management**

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

Microsoft © 2015 Page 138 of 155

#### 5.6 Private and Public Keys

This is a section header with a brief statement as such.

#### 5.6.1 Private/Public Key Pair Generation

This is a section header.

#### 5.6.1.1 FFC Key Pair Generation

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.6.1.2 ECC Key Pair Generation

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

## 5.6.2 Assurances of the Arithmetic Validity of a Public Key

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

The "should" statement is:

"The application performing the key establishment on behalf of the owner and recipient **should** determine whether or not to allow key establishment based upon the method(s) of assurance that was used."

The "should" statement only applies to an application, which is outside the scope of the TOE.

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

# 5.6.2.1 Owner Assurances of Static Public Key Validity

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

The "should" statement is:

"The application performing the key establishment on behalf of the owner **should** determine whether or not to allow key establishment based upon the method(s) of assurance that was used."

The "should" statement only applies to an application, which is outside the scope of the TOE.

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Microsoft © 2015 Page 139 of 155

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should" N/A

#### 5.6.2.2 Recipient Assurances of Static Public Key Validity

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

The "should" statement is:

"The application performing the key establishment on behalf of the recipient **should** determine whether or not to allow key establishment based upon the method(s) of assurance that was used."

The "should" statement only applies to an application, which is outside the scope of the TOE.

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.6.2.3 Recipient Assurances of Ephemeral Public Key Validity

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

The "should" statement is:

"The application performing the key establishment on behalf of the recipient **should** determine whether or not to allow key establishment based upon the method(s) of assurance that was used."

The "should" statement only applies to an application, which is outside the scope of the TOE.

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.6.2.4 FFC Full Public Key Validation Routine – Unimplemented

Note: Full public key validation is one of several options available for assurances of the arithmetic validity of public keys. Microsoft chose not to implement it in the TOE.

#### 5.6.2.5 ECC Full Public Key Validation Routine - Unimplemented

Note: Full public key validation is one of several options available for assurances of the arithmetic validity of public keys. Microsoft chose not to implement it in the TOE.

#### 5.6.2.6 ECC Partial Public Key Validation Routine

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.6.3 Assurances of the Possession of a Static Private Key

Microsoft © 2015 Page 140 of 155

This section and all subsections concern Owner and Recipient user behavior, which is outside the scope of the TOE.

5.6.3.1 Owner Assurances of Possession of a Static Private Key

5.6.3.2 Recipient Assurance of Owner's Possession of a Static Private Key

5.6.3.2.1 Recipient Obtains Assurance through a Trusted Third Party

5.6.3.2.2 Recipient Obtains Assurance Directly from the Claimed Owner

5.6.4 Key Pair Management

This is a section header.

#### 5.6.4.1 Common Requirements on Static and Ephemeral Key Pairs

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.6.4.2 Specific Requirements on Static Key Pairs

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

The "should" statement is:

"The application performing the key establishment on behalf of the recipient **should** determine whether or not to allow key establishment based upon the method(s) of assurance that was used."

The "should" statement only applies to an application, which is outside the scope of the TOF.

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.6.4.3 Specific Requirements on Ephemeral Key Pairs

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

- 1. The first instance of the word "should" is: "An ephemeral key pair should be generated as close to its time of use as possible." The TOE implements this.
- 2. The second "should" statement is:

"The application performing the key establishment on behalf of the recipient **should** determine whether or not to allow key establishment based upon the method(s) of assurance that was used."

This second instance of the word "should" only applies to an application, which is outside the scope of the TOE.

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.7 DLC Primitives

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

Microsoft © 2015 Page 141 of 155

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.7.1 Diffie-Hellman Primitives

This is a section header.

#### 5.7.1.1 Finite Field Cryptography Diffie-Hellman (FFC DH) Primitive

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

## 5.7.1.2 Elliptic Curve Cryptography Cofactor Diffie-Hellman (ECC CDH) Primitive

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.7.2 MQV Primitives -- Unimplemented

This section and all subsections (5.7.2 through 5.7.2.3.2) are MQV primitives. MQV is only one of several options available for key establishment schemes. Microsoft chose not to implement MQV primitives in the TOE.

- 5.7.2.1 Finite Field Cryptography MQV (FFC MQV) Primitive Unimplemented
- 5.7.2.1.1 MQV2 Form of the FFC MQV Primitive Unimplemented
- 5.7.2.1.2 MQV1 Form of the FFC MQV Primitive Unimplemented
- 5.7.2.2 ECC MQV Associate Value Function Unimplemented
- 5.7.2.3 Elliptic Curve Cryptography MQV (ECC MQV) Primitive Unimplemented
- 5.7.2.3.1 Full MQV Form of the ECC MQV Primitive Unimplemented
- 5.7.2.3.2 One-Pass Form of the ECC MQV Primitive Unimplemented

#### **5.8 Key Derivation Functions for Key Agreement Schemes**

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.8.1 Concatenation Key Derivation Function (Approved Alternative 1)

Microsoft © 2015 Page 142 of 155

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.8.2 ASN.1 Key Derivation Function (Approved Alternative 2) – Unimplemented

#### 11.1.1.4 Section 6 Key Agreement

This section is an explanation of three (3) categories of key agreement schemes as detailed in sections 6.1, 6.2, and 6.3. Under each category, there are one or more subcategories that are classified by static keys usage. SP 800-56A does not mandate the implementation of all categories and subcategories. Microsoft chose to implement a subset of all possible key agreement schemes in the TOE.

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

The "should" statement is:

"Key confirmation may be added to many of these schemes to provide assurance that the participants share the same keying material; see Section 8 for details on key confirmation. Each party **should** have such assurance."

Microsoft chose not to implement the option of key confirmation in the TOE.

#### 6.1 Schemes Using Two Ephemeral Key Pairs, C(2)

This section is a header with a short explanation of the subcategories.

# 6.1.1 Each Party Has a Static Key Pair and Generates an Ephemeral Key Pair, C(2, 2) – Unimplemented

This section and all subsections (6.1.1 through 6.1.1.5) are optional. Microsoft chose not to implement them in the TOE.

6.1.1.1 dhHybrid1, C(2, 2, FFC DH) - Unimplemented

6.1.1.2 Full Unified Model, C(2, 2, ECC CDH) - Unimplemented

6.1.1.3 MQV2, C(2, 2, FFC MQV) - Unimplemented

6.1.1.4 Full MQV, C(2, 2, ECC MQV) – Unimplemented

6.1.1.5 Rationale for Choosing a C(2, 2) Scheme – Unimplemented

#### 6.1.2 Each Party Generates an Ephemeral Key Pair; No Static Keys are Used, C(2, 0)

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

Microsoft © 2015 Page 143 of 155

#### 6.1.2.1 dhEphem, C(2, 0, FFC DH)

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 6.1.2.2 Ephemeral Unified Model, C(2, 0, ECC CDH)

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

## 6.1.2.3 Rationale for Choosing a C(2, 0) Scheme

This section only explains the rationale.

#### 6.2 Schemes Using One Ephemeral Key Pair, C(1)

This section is a header with a short explanation of the subcategories.

# 6.2.1 Initiator Has a Static Key Pair and Generates an Ephemeral Key Pair; Responder Has a Static Key Pair, C(1, 2) – Unimplemented

This section and all subsections (6.2.1 through 6.2.1.5) are optional. Microsoft chose not to implement them in the TOE.

- 6.2.1.1 dhHybridOneFlow, C(1, 2, FFC DH) Unimplemented
- 6.2.1.2 One-Pass Unified Model, C(1, 2, ECC CDH) Unimplemented
- 6.2.1.3 MQV1, C(1, 2, FFC MQV) Unimplemented
- 6.2.1.4 One-Pass MQV, C(1, 2, ECC MQV) Unimplemented
- 6.2.1.5 Rationale for Choosing a C(1, 2) Scheme Unimplemented

# 6.2.2 Initiator Generates Only an Ephemeral Key Pair; Responder Has Only a Static Key Pair, C(1, 1)

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 6.2.2.1 dhOneFlow, C(1, 1, FFC DH)

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Microsoft © 2015 Page 144 of 155

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should" N/A

#### 6.2.2.2 One-Pass Diffie-Hellman, C(1, 1, ECC CDH)

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 6.2.2.3 Rationale in Choosing a C(1, 1) Scheme

This section only explains the rationale.

#### 6.3 Scheme Using No Ephemeral Key Pairs, C(0, 2)

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 6.3.1 dhStatic, C(0, 2, FFC DH)

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 6.3.2 Static Unified Model, C(0, 2, ECC CDH)

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 6.3.3 Rationale in Choosing a C(0, 2) Scheme

This section only explains the rationale.

#### 11.1.1.5 Section 7 DLC-Based Key Transport

This section was not selected in the ST.

#### 11.1.1.6 Section 8 Key Confirmation

As allowed in Section 6 Key Agreement, Microsoft chose not to implement optional key confirmation in the TOE.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 145 of 155

#### 11.1.1.7 Section 9 Key Recovery

```
"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A
```

#### 11.1.1.8 Section 10 Implementation Validation

The TOE shall be proven to comply with the "shall" statements in this section as evidenced by NIST CMVP FIPS 140-2 validation certificates when they are published on the NIST CMVP Validated FIPS 140-1 and FIPS 140-2 Cryptographic Modules website:

#### http://csrc.nist.gov/groups/STM/cmvp/documents/140-1/140val-all.htm

```
"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE
N/A
Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"
N/A
Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"
N/A
```

#### 11.1.1.9 Appendices A, D, and E (Informative)

These appendices are informative and are included here for completeness.

#### 11.1.1.10 Appendix B: Rationale for Including Identifiers in the KDF Input

This section is explanatory rationale and is included here for completeness.

#### 11.1.1.11 Appendix C: Data Conversions (Normative)

```
"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE
N/A
Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"
N/A
Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"
N/A
```

#### 11.1.2 Exceptions

## 11.1.2.1 TOE-Specific Extensions

There are not any TOE-specific extensions that may impact the security requirements the TOE is to enforce.

#### 11.1.2.2 Additional Processing

There is no processing that is not included in the documents that may impact the security requirements the TOE is to enforce.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 146 of 155

#### 11.1.2.3 Alternative Implementations

There are no alternative implementations allowed by the documents that may impact the security requirements the TOE is to enforce.

## 11.2 Special Publication 800-56B

The source document is NIST Special Publication 800-56, "<u>Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key</u> Establishment Schemes Using Using Integer Factorization Cryptography".

#### 11.2.1 NIST SP 800-56B Sections

This standard describes requirements and procedures for key establishment schemes using an asymmetric-based key agreement and key transport scheme based on the RSA algorithm. The FCS\_CKM.1(ASYM KA) security functional requirement is applicable only to the generation of the RSA key pair that is subsequently used by key establishment operations. Therefore only the SHALL, SHOULD, SHALL NOT and SHOULD NOT directives that are related to sections of this standard specifying requirements on the actual RSA key generation and associated cryptographic primitives used for RSA key generation are relevant in the assurance activity for FCS\_CKM.1(ASYM KA). All other sections in this standard that are not relevant to actual RSA key generation are noted as such.

#### 11.2.1.1 Sections 1 - 3

The first three (3) sections do not specify any relevant requirements. For completeness, they are:

- 1. Introduction
- 2. Scope and Purpose
- 3. Definitions, Symbols and Abbreviations

#### 11.2.1.2 Section 4 Key Establishment Schemes Overview

This section is associated with key establishment processes that are based on using a generated RSA key pair and is not relevant to the actual RSA key pair generation.

- 4.1 Key Establishment Preparations by an Owner
- **4.2 Key Agreement Process**
- **4.3 IFC-based Key Transport Process**

#### 11.2.1.3 Section 5 Cryptographic Elements

This section describes cryptographic elements associated with RSA key pair generation or using a generated RSA key pair.

#### **5.1 Cryptographic Hash Functions**

```
"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE
N/A
Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"
N/A
Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"
N/A
```

Microsoft © 2015 Page 147 of 155

#### 5.2 Message Authentication Code (MAC) Algorithm

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.3 Random Bit Generation

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### **5.4 Prime Number Generators**

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### **5.5 Primality Testing Methods**

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 5.6 Nonces

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

The TOE implements random nonces.

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

### **5.7 Symmetric Key-Wrapping Algorithms**

This section describes symmetric key-wrapping algorithms that is not relevant to the generation of RSA key pairs and hence is not relevant in assurance activity for FCS\_CKM.1(ASYM KA).

#### 5.8 Mask Generation Function (MGF)

Microsoft © 2015 Page 148 of 155

This section describes a mechanism for use with the RSA-OAEP based schemes associated with key transport operations that use RSA key pairs and is is not relevant to the actual generation of those key pairs and hence is not relevant in assurance activity for FCS CKM.1(ASYM KA).

5.8.1 Concatenation Key Derivation Function (Approved Alternative 1)

5.8.2 ASN.1 Key Derivation Function (Approved Alternative 2)

#### 5.9 Key Derivation Functions for Key Establishment Schemes

This section describes a mechanism for deriving shared keying material from a shared secret between entities that use generated RSA key pairs and is not relevant to the actual generation of those key pairs and hence is not relevant in assurance activity for FCS\_CKM.1(ASYM KA).

5.9.1 Concatenation Key Derivation Function (Approved Alternative 1)

5.9.2 ASN.1 Key Derivation Function (Approved Alternative 2)

#### 11.2.1.4 Section 6 RSA Key Pairs

This section describes RSA key pair generation, some of which are relevant to RSA key generation and some of which are not relevant. All non-relevant sub-sections are included for completeness.

#### 6.1 General Requirements

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE From item (7):

"The owner of the key pair (or agents trusted to act on behalf of the owner) **should** determine that the methods used for obtaining these assurances are sufficient and appropriate to meet the security requirements of the owner's intended application(s)."

The "should" statement only applies to user/application behavior and is not relevant to RSA key pair generation.

#### From item (8):

The recipient of a public key (or agents trusted to act on behalf of the recipient) **should** determine which method(s) for obtaining these assurances are sufficient and appropriate to meet the security requirements of the owner's intended application(s). The application performing the key establishment on behalf of the recipient **should** determine whether or not to allow the key establishment, based upon the method(s) used to obtain this assurance. Such knowledge may be explicitly provided to the application in some manner, or may be implicitly provided by the operation of the application itself.

The "should" statements only apply to user/application behavior and are not relevant to RSA key pair generation.

#### From item (9):

The recipient of a public key (or agents trusted to act on behalf of the recipient) **should** determine that the method used for obtaining this assurance is sufficient and appropriate to meet the security requirements of the recipient's intended application(s).

Microsoft © 2015 Page 149 of 155

The "should" statements only apply to user/application behavior and is not relevant to RSA key pair generation.

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

Use of "should" statement is described immediately above.

#### 6.2 Criteria for RSA Key Pairs for Key Establishment

This section does not specify any "shall", "shall not", "should" or "should not" statements.

#### 6.2.1 Definition of a Key Pair

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 6.2.2 Formats

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### 6.2.3 Parameter Length Sets

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

#### **6.3 RSA Key Pair Generators**

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

# 6.3.1 RSAKPG1 Family: RSA Key Pair Generation with a Fixed Public Exponent

This section and its subsections do not specify any "shall", "shall not", "should" or "should not" statements.

#### 6.3.1.1 rsakpg1-basic

Microsoft © 2015 Page 150 of 155

- 6.3.1.2 rsakpg1-prime-factor
- 6.3.1.3 rsakpg1-crt

#### 6.3.2 RSAKPG2 Family: RSA Key Pair Generation with a Random Public Exponent

This section and its subsections do not specify any "shall", "shall not", "should" or "should not" statements.

- 6.3.2 RSAKPG2 Family: RSA Key Pair Generation with a Random Public Exponent
- 6.3.2.1 rsakpg2-basic
- 6.3.2.2 rsakpg2-prime-factor
- 6.3.2.3 rsakpg2-crt

#### 6.4 Assurances of Validity

This section and its subsections describe assurance of RSA key pair validity that only applies to the owner or recipient of a RSA key pair, which is outside the scope of the TOE.

- 6.4.1 Assurance of Key Pair Validity
- 6.4.1.1 General Method for Obtaining Owner Assurance of Key Pair Validity
- 6.4.1.2 RSAKPV1 Family: RSA Key Pair Validation with a Fixed Exponent
- 6.4.1.2.1 rsakpv1-basic
- 6.4.1.2.2 rsakpv1-prime-factor
- 6.4.1.3 RSAKPV2 Family: RSA Key Pair Validation with a Random Exponent
- 6.4.1.3.1 rsakpv2-basic
- 6.4.1.3.2 rsakpv2-prime-factor
- 6.4.2 Recipient Assurances of Public Key Validity
- 6.4.2.1 General Method for Obtaining Assurance of Public Key Validity
- 6.4.2.2 Partial Public Key Validation for RSA

#### **6.5 Assurances of Private Key Possession**

This section and its subsections describe owner assurance of private key possession by applications, which is outside the scope of the TOE.

- 6.5.1 Owner Assurance of Private Key Possession
- 6.5.2 Recipient Assurance of Owner's Possession of a Private Key
- 6.5.2.1 Recipient Indirectly Obtains Assurance of Possession Using a Trusted Third Party
- 6.5.2.2 Recipient Obtains Assurance of Possession Directly from the Claimed Owner

#### **6.6 Key Confirmation**

This section and its subsections describe an application process applied by provider and recipient entities that uses their respective RSA key pairs to confirm they have a shared secret, which is outside the scope of the TOE.

- **6.6.1 Unilateral Key Confirmation for Key Establishment Schemes**
- 6.6.2 Bilateral Key Confirmation for Key Establishment Schemes

#### 6.7 Authentication

This section and its subsections do not specify any "shall", "shall not", "should" or "should not" statements.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 151 of 155

#### 11.2.1.5 Section 7 IFC Primitives and Operations

This section and its subsection are concerned with applications establishing keying material for a secret shared between two entities using a RSA key pair, which is outside the scope of the TOE.

- 7.1 Encryption and Decryption Primitives
- **7.1.1 RSAEP**
- **7.1.2 RSADP**
- 7.2 Encryption and Decryption Operations
- 7.2.1 RSA Secret Value Encapsulation (RSASVE)
- 7.2.1.1 RSASVE Components
- 7.2.1.2 RSASVE Generate Operation
- 7.2.1.3 RSASVE Recovery Operation
- 7.2.2 RSA with Optimal Asymmetric Encryption Padding (RSA-OAEP)
- 7.2.2.1 RSA-OAEP Components
- 7.2.2.2 RSA-OAEP Encryption Operation
- 7.2.2.3 RSA-OAEP Decryption Operation
- 7.2.3 RSA-based Key-Encapsulation Mechanism with a Key-Wrapping Scheme (RSA-KEM-KWS)
- 7.2.3.1 RSA-KEM-KWS Components
- 7.2.3.2 RSA-KEM-KWS Encryption Operation
- 7.2.3.3 RSA-KEM-KWS Decryption Operation

#### 11.2.1.6 Section 8 Key Agreement Schemes

This section and its subsection are concerned with applications deriving keys based on a secret shared between two entities that was established using a RSA key pair, which is outside the scope of the TOE.

- 8.1 Common Components for Key Agreement
- 8.2 The KAS1 Family
- 8.2.1 KAS1 Family Prerequisites
- 8.2.2 KAS1-basic
- 8.2.3 KAS1 Key Confirmation
- 8.2.3.1 KAS1 Key Confirmation Components
- 8.2.3.2 KAS1-responder-confirmation
- 8.2.4 KAS1 Security Properties
- 8.3 The KAS2 Family
- 8.3.1 KAS2 Family Prerequisites
- 8.3.2 KAS2-basic
- 8.3.3 KAS2 Key Confirmation
- 8.3.3.1 KAS2 Key Confirmation Components
- 8.3.3.2 KAS2-responder-confirmation
- 8.3.3.3 KAS2-initiator-confirmation
- 8.3.3.4 KAS2-bilateral-confirmation
- 8.3.4 KAS2 Security Properties

#### 11.2.1.7 Section 9 IFC based Key Transport Schemes

This section and its subsection are concerned with transferring keying material between sender and receiver entities using a RSA key pair, which is outside the scope of the TOE.

- 9.1 Additional Input
- 9.2 KTS-OAEP Family: Key Transport Using RSA-OAEP

Microsoft © 2015 Page 152 of 155

- 9.2.1 KTS-OAEP Family Prerequisites
- 9.2.2 Common components
- 9.2.3 KTS-OAEP-basic
- 9.2.4 KTS-OAEP Key Confirmation
- 9.2.4.1 KTS-OAEP Common Components for Key Confirmation
- 9.2.4.2 KTS-OAEP-receiver-confirmation
- **9.2.5 KTS-OAEP Security Properties**
- 9.3 KTS-KEM-KWS Family: Key Transport using RSA-KEM-KWS
- 9.3.1 KTS-KEM-KWS Family Prerequisites
- 9.3.2 Common Components of the KTS-KEM-KWS Schemes
- 9.3.3 KTS-KEM-KWS-basic
- 9.3.4 KTS-KEM-KWS Key Confirmation
- 9.3.4.1 KTS-KEM-KWS Common Components for Key Confirmation
- 9.3.4.2 KTS-KEM-KWS-receiver-confirmation
- 9.3.5 KTS-KEM-KWS Security Properties

#### 11.2.1.8 Section 10 Key Recovery

This section and its subsections do not specify any "shall", "shall not", "should" or "should not" statements.

### 11.2.1.9 Section 11 Implementation Validation

The TOE shall be proven to comply with the "shall" statements in this section as evidenced by NIST CMVP FIPS 140-2 validation certificates when they are published on the NIST CMVP Validated FIPS 140-1 and FIPS 140-2 Cryptographic Modules website:

#### http://csrc.nist.gov/groups/STM/cmvp/documents/140-1/140val-all.htm

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

# 11.2.1.10 Appendix A: Summary of Differences between this Recommendation and ANS X9.44 (Informative)

This section and its subsections do not specify any "shall", "shall not", "should" or "should not" statements.

#### 11.2.1.11 Appendix B: Data Conversions (Normative)

"Shall not", "should", and "should not" Options Implemented by TOE

N/A

Rationale for Implementation of "shall not" or "should not"

N/A

Omission of Functionality Related to "shall" or "should"

N/A

Microsoft © 2015 Page 153 of 155

# 11.2.1.12 Appendix C: Prime Factor Recovery (Normative)

This section and its subsections do not specify any "shall", "shall not", "should" or "should not" statements.

# 11.2.1.13 Appendix D: References (Informative)

This section and its subsections do not specify any "shall", "shall not", "should" or "should not" statements.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 154 of 155

# 12 Appendix D: TOE Binary List

Please send mail to <a href="wincommicrosoft.com">wincommicrosoft.com</a> if you would like a list of the Windows binaries included in this evaluation.

Microsoft © 2015 Page 155 of 155